THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SOUTH AFRICA: CATALYZING FINANCING AND CAPACITY FOR THE BIODIVERSITY ECONOMY AROUND PROTECTED AREAS (P170213)

ENVIRONMENTAL AND SOCIAL MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK (ESMF)

May 12, 2020
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY ........................................................................................................... 3

1 Introduction......................................................................................................................... Error! Bookmark not defined. 8

2 Methodology And Consultation......................................................................................... 40

3 Baseline Data ....................................................................................................................... 43
   3.1 KwaZulu Natal Province
   3.2 Eastern Cape Province
   3.3 Socio-Economic Background
   3.4 Limpopo Province
   3.5 Socio-Economic Background

4 Description Of The Administrative, Policy And Regulatory Framework .................. 63

5 Description Of Applicable World Bank Environmental & Social Standards .... Error! Bookmark not defined.

6 Determination Of Potential Environment And Social Impacts ........................................ 89

7 Project Review, Coordination & Implementation Arrangements .................................. 103

8 Capacity Building, Training And Technical Assistance ..................................................... 109

9 Public Consultation And Disclosure ................................................................................. 111

10 ANNEXES .......................................................................................................................... 128
   Annex 1. Checklist for Screening of Projects................................................................. 121
   Annex 2. Generic TOR for Preparation of ESMP ......................................................... 125
   Annex 3. Template for ESMP ......................................................................................... Error! Bookmark not defined. 7
   Annex 4: Incident Reporting Form .................................................................................. 129
   Annex 5: Chance Find Procedures .................................................................................. 132
   Annex 6: Negatives List ................................................................................................... 133
   Annex 7: Labour Management Procedures ..................................................................... 134
   Annex 8: List of Stakeholders Consulted ......................................................................... 138
   Annex 9: Project Map ........................................................................................................ 142
   Annex 10: Biodiversity Stewardship Program South Africa ........................................ 143
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This document is the Environmental and Social Management Framework (ESMF) for the proposed South Africa: Catalyzing Financing and Capacity for the Biodiversity Economy around Protected Areas (PAs), (the Project) financed through the grant of the Global Environmental Facility (GEF) administered by the World Bank. The ESMF has been prepared by the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) in consultation with South African National Parks (SANParks), iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority (IWPA) and South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) as part of meeting the World Bank Environmental and Social Policy for Investment Project Financing and World Bank’s Environmental and Social Standards\(^1\) (ESS).

Project Description

Republic of South Africa (RSA) is one of most biodiverse countries in the world, and its biodiversity contributes significantly to the national economy, and to local livelihoods. With a varied geography ranging from plains and savannas to deserts and high mountains, South Africa’s ecosystems support over 95,000 species, and its rich biodiversity contributes significantly to the national economy, particularly through nature-based tourism (NBT). Biodiversity and its habitats also contribute to the livelihood of the poorest segments of the population, by providing a range of goods, such as food, biomass fuel, and medicine; and services such as water. South Africa’s ecological infrastructure also increases resilience to climate shocks, by reducing the impact of extreme weather events such as drought and floods.

However, South Africa PAs are increasingly under threat, resulting in adverse impacts on biodiversity and ecosystems they harbor, on the rural population dependent on them, and on the broader regional and national economies. Unsustainable and illegal practices on biodiversity, which are among the main causes of loss and degradation of wildlife, are largely induced by: i) insufficient financing for effective PAs management and to support sustainable rural development; ii) rural poverty, a lack of access to effective and sustainable livelihoods support (such as jobs, business support, direct payments from conservation), and the absence of meaningful livelihood alternatives; and iii) fragmentated, non-coordinated, and incompatible land use planning and management, leading to suboptimal land use management decisions.

A key threat to the integrity of PAs is poverty, leading to overexploitation of natural resources, including wildlife crime through poaching and overfishing. The gender gaps in

\(^1\) The World Bank’s Environmental and Social Standards set out the requirements for Borrowers relating to the identification and assessment of environmental and social risks and impacts associated with projects supported by the Bank through Investment Project Financing. The Bank believes that the application of these standards, by focusing on the identification and management of environmental and social risks, will support Borrowers in their goal to reduce poverty and increase prosperity in a sustainable manner for the benefit of the environment and their citizens. The standards will: (a) support Borrowers in achieving good international practice relating to environmental and social sustainability; (b) assist Borrowers in fulfilling their national and international environmental and social obligations; (c) enhance nondiscrimination, transparency, participation, accountability and governance; and (d) enhance the sustainable development outcomes of projects through ongoing stakeholder engagement.
rural communities around PAs represent an additional challenge. Local communities are mostly negatively impacted and realize limited value from living in the periphery of PAs.

The *Catalyzing Financing and Capacity for the Biodiversity Economy around Protected Areas* Project (hereafter referred to as The Project) seeks to leverage financial resources and improve capacity to implement the South African Biodiversity Economy Programme and increase benefits from selected PA landscapes to local communities.

The project’s Component 1 is designed to demonstrate DEFF’s biodiversity economy nodes concept in the three project sites through (i) improving stakeholder coordination, more efficient use of existing resources, and alignment of investment; (ii) channelling funding and technical assistance to SMME development to improve economic activity and create jobs; (iii) improving benefit sharing by local communities through strengthened governance models; and (iv) expanding the PA estate through South Africa’s stewardship program (details in Annex 10). Component 1 activities will be carried out in the Greater Addo-Amathole Node in the Eastern Cape Province, the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node in Limpopo Province, and the Greater iSimangaliso Node in KwaZulu-Natal Province.

Component 2 is designed to share lessons learned from the three project nodes – between the nodes, at national level, and internationally through the Global Wildlife Program – for replication and scale-up. These activities will be carried out at the national level.

The potential sub project activities that may be supported include the expansion of the conservation landscape by helping secure about 20,000 ha of land through the biodiversity stewardship approach of South Africa, whereby private landowners, including community property associations, voluntarily set aside land for conservation purposes. While restrictions on land use for the expansion of the Protected Areas will likely occur and as such a Process Framework (PF) has been developed in accordance with ESS5, Involuntary resettlement is not expected to occur as the project will apply the Biodiversity Stewardship program. Financial and technical support will be provided to selected small-, micro- and medium-sized enterprises (SMMEs) - approximately 70 percent will go to strengthen existing, viable businesses to help them grow through facilitating increased market linkages, training and mentorship; and 30 percent will be invested in the identification and incubation of new start-ups. Special focus will be placed on supporting women-led SMMEs and expanding job opportunities to women and youth.

Specific activities to be financed include: training on business planning and business expansion; mentorship programs; and small grants for equipment and small infrastructure. Financing will include: technical assistance and extension services to communities to achieve the following: (i) design, implement, and monitor land-use management plans; (ii) restore and/or maintain the veld for grazing productivity and ecosystem functioning; (ii) undertake infrastructure planning and development (e.g., in the form of a CDF); (iii) implement a system for sustainable off-take and harvesting rates and procedures, e.g. for timber, medicinal plants, game; (iv) equip youth as community monitors of ecosystem condition and functioning; and (v) manage potential human-wildlife interaction.
Business areas that will be supported through the project include: i) tourism: hospitality, marketing, tourism activities, services to the tourism industry (chefs, electricity technicians, etc.); ii) game ranching: animal husbandry, veterinary services, game processing, etc.; iii) forest products: commercial forestry, veld and non-timber forest products; iv) agriculture: agronomy, post-harvest management, processing and commercialization.

The activities highlighted above could lead to the applicability of a number of World Bank’s Environmental and Social Standards (ESSs), namely ESS 1- Assessment and Management of Environmental and Social Risks and Impacts, ESS 2 Labor and Working Conditions; ESS 3 Resource Efficiency and Pollution Prevention and Management; ESS 4 Community Health and Safety; ESS 6 Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Management of Living Natural Resources and ESS 8 Cultural Heritage. The ESSs are designed to help Borrowers to manage the risks and impacts of a project, and improve their environmental and social performance, through a risk and outcomes-based approach.

**Objective of ESMF**

Since the sub-projects to be supported by the program is evolving and the scope and other details are not available prior to project appraisal, the appropriate instrument at this stage is an Environmental and Social Management Framework (ESMF). The ESMF is an instrument that examines the risks and impacts when a project consists of a program and/or series of subprojects, and the risks and impacts cannot be determined until the program or subproject details have been identified.

This ESMF is expected to ensure that environmental and social management is integrated into the development and operation of investments to be financed under the Project to ensure effective mitigation of potentially adverse impacts while enhancing accruing benefits. The purpose of the ESMF is:

(i) To provide as much information as possible about environmental and social impacts (including possible land acquisition and resettlement, construction related social impacts as well as labor management, social inclusion for project benefits and grievance redress mechanisms) at the project’s current state of preparation;

(ii) To inform project planning and design process by comparing potential impacts of alternative locations, configurations, and construction techniques that are under consideration; and

(iii) To describe procedures for subsequent assessment of impacts and development of appropriate impact management instruments when the details of the sub project investments become available.

It sets out the principles, rules, guidelines and procedures to assess the environmental and social risks and impacts and contains measures and plans to reduce, mitigate and/or offset adverse risks and impacts. The ESMF includes information on the agency or agencies responsible for implementation, including on its capacity to manage environmental and social risks and determines the institutional measures to be taken during the project.
implementation, including capacity building activities. The ESMF further establishes a process of environmental and social screening which will permit the institutions in charge of the implementation of the projects to identify, assess and mitigate the environmental and social impacts of sub project investments. An estimated budget for implementation and monitoring is also included.

The ESMF has been prepared in line with the relevant World Bank’s Environmental and Social Standards and further taken into account the appropriate Republic of South Africa’s policies, legal and institutional framework related to environmental and social assessment.

**Relevant Policy and Legal Statutes**

The following legal instruments among others were reviewed in view of the fact that they provide guidance and regulations when implementing projects in protected areas (PAs). These are principally the RSA legislations that apply to this project and a comparative analysis has been made between some certain relevant regulations of the RSA and the World Bank’s ESSs.

- Constitution Act 108 of 1996
- National Development Plan 2030
- National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No 107 of 1998, as amended)
- National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003
- Functional areas of National, Provincial and Local Government Competence
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004
- National Water Act (Act No 36 of 1998)
- Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983);
- Environmental Conservation Act (Act No. 73 of 1989)
- National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)
- World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act No, 49 of 1999)
- National Environmental Management: National Air Quality Act
- Occupational Health and Safety Act 1993
- Physical Planning Act 1991
- Basic Conditions of Employment 1991
- Labour Relations Act 1995
- Employment Equity Act 1998
- Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 2000
- Domestic Violence Act 1998
- Criminal Law Amendment Act 1991
- Restitution of Land Rights Act 2003
- Communal Property Association Act 1996
Environmental and Social Requirements
In order to reduce, minimise and mitigate adverse impacts and undue harm of its development projects to the environment, all bank-financed projects are guided by environmental and social standards (ESSs). A number of Banks’ ESS have been considered applicable as a result of this project and that the RSA and project will meet throughout the project lifecycle and they include:

- Environmental and Social Standard 1: Assessment and Management of Environmental and Social Risks and Impacts;
- Environmental and Social Standard 2: Labor and Working Conditions;
- Environmental and Social Standard 3: Resource Efficiency and Pollution Prevention and Management;
- Environmental and Social Standard 4: Community Health and Safety;
- Environmental and Social Standard 5: Land Acquisition, Restrictions on Land Use and Involuntary Resettlement;
- Environmental and Social Standard 6: Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Management of Living Natural Resources;
- Environmental and Social Standard 7: Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities;
- Environmental and Social Standard 8: Cultural Heritage;
- Environmental and Social Standard 9: Financial Intermediaries; and
- Environmental and Social Standard 10: Stakeholder Engagement and Information Disclosure.

In addition to this ESMF, the project has also prepared a Process Framework (PF) and a Stakeholder Engagement Plan (SEP). The SEP and ESMF should be implemented in compliance with the new COVI9-19 guidance of the World Bank relating to consultations and disclosure. Reference should be made to the Technical Note: Public Consultations and Stakeholder Engagement in WB-supported operations when there are constraints on conducting public meetings.

These documents must be made available for public review at a place accessible to local people in a form, manner, and language they can understand. All necessary safeguard documents that will be locally disclosed will also be forwarded to the World Bank for disclosure at the official World Bank Website.

Environmental and Social Impacts

Beneficial Impacts
The project’s primary activities can be expected to yield multiple categories of benefits. Quantifiable benefits include: Restoration and conservation of terrestrial and aquatic ecological process and management of the Addo Elephant National Park, Greater Fish Reserve, the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and the Kruger National Park as well as support for a number of local development initiatives, including employment and livelihood generating activities. Improved land cover due to rehabilitation efforts, reduced forest loss and encroachment, improved livelihoods/earnings/job opportunities for local people, increases in eco-tourism arrivals / earnings, and multiplier economic benefits from the jobs
and tourism increases. Though it is not a primary purpose of the project, some carbon sequestration or reduced emissions could be expected (and quantified) based on improved agricultural and natural resource management practices and reduced encroachment on conservation areas. Less tangible benefits include strengthened institutions, habitat connectivity, improved corridors, greater economic opportunity, and improved environmental service delivery, such as water quality.

**Potential Adverse Impacts**

The Social Risk Rating is currently rated substantial. The Project does not involve activities with a potential to harm the population, their livelihoods or assets. However, there are key social concerns that provide for potential social risks and impacts associated with this project that are mostly temporary, predictable and reversible with substantial investment and time and include the benefits sharing challenges given the potential exclusion of either individuals or communities, conflicts among the various stakeholders' groups due to varying needs and interests, and potential land access restrictions through expanded conservation stewardship agreements. In addition, the number and complexity of the institutions involved in the implementation of this project as well as their capacity to implement the ESF requirements alongside the national procedures may pose challenges and will require strong and effective coordination. Further, potential impacts on local communities may be associated with (i) labor and working conditions of those engaged in the sub-project minor construction works and those directly engaged by the project to provide technical services; (2) community health and safety related to the minor construction works and minor resultant risks of gender based violence (GBV)/sexual exploitation and abuse (SEA). These potential impacts and risks will be managed with the application of appropriate mitigation measures as outlined in the various instruments prepared by this project which includes the ESMF, SEP and PF.

The Environmental Risk Classification of the Project is Moderate. No significant or irreversible environmental risks and impacts are anticipated because the scale of activities are expected to be small (rehabilitation of access roads, existing buildings etc). Some temporary, localized, adverse. Activities under sub-component 1.4 include infrastructure planning and development that will cause site-specific environmental impacts associated with occupational health and safety, dust, noise, management and disposal of debris and other construction related waste. These impacts will be temporary, localized, of minor to moderate scale, and are anticipated partly during the construction phase. These environmental risks and impacts will be site specific, temporary, and manageable by applying good construction practices.

Other areas of risk could be associated with governance structures and legislation; and considerations relating to stability, conflict or security. Risks are also associated with the capacity and commitment of the Borrower (including sub-implementing agencies) to manage the environmental and social risks and impacts in a manner consistent with the ESSs. Labor Management Procedures, Chance Find Procedures and Screening Tools are included as Annexes in this ESMF.
This ESMF has been designed to include tools that will be used to screen each proposed sub project investment prior to implementation and contains recommendation on the mitigation measures that need to be adhered to in order to reduce the adverse impacts. The sub-projects to be financed will be subjected to environmental and social analysis in accordance with national law and any requirement of the ESSs that the Bank deems relevant to such subprojects. The ESMF also includes a negative list to indicate which sub-projects cannot be financed.

The following table provides a matrix of potential impacts, mitigation measures and defines roles and responsibilities of various implementing agencies and stakeholders.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact issue</th>
<th>Proposed Action/ Measures</th>
<th>Implementation tool/criteria</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Inputs)</th>
<th>Monitoring Indicators (Outcomes)</th>
<th>Verification</th>
<th>Project stage</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solid waste disposal</td>
<td>Provide adequate waste reception facilities at construction camp sites</td>
<td>Waste management plan/Construction site management plan</td>
<td>Number of waste bins on site</td>
<td>Percentage of workers who follow the solid waste disposal plan including use of receptacles</td>
<td>Weekly checks by project engineer</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dispose of waste at approved waste collection sites</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waste disposal plan and training of workers</td>
<td>Number of workers familiar and aware of the waste disposal plan at the construction sites</td>
<td>Project engineer</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waste oil/fuel disposal</td>
<td>Provide drums/containers for temporary storage on site of waste oil from equipment and vehicles.</td>
<td>Waste management plan/Construction site management plan</td>
<td>Waste oil drums/containers on site</td>
<td>Number of workers familiar and aware of the waste disposal plan</td>
<td>Monthly checks by project engineer</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dispose of waste oil through an approved agent</td>
<td></td>
<td>Availability of waste disposal plan (waste oil)</td>
<td>Percentage of workers who follow the waste disposal plan including use of receptacles</td>
<td>Project engineer</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air pollution</td>
<td>Operate well maintained vehicles, trucks and other equipment</td>
<td>Routine maintenance plan for machinery</td>
<td>Number of sound machinery and equipment purchased</td>
<td>Percentage of workers following the good practices for equipment and machinery maintenance</td>
<td>Independent check by project engineers</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor/Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use good quality fuel and lubricants</td>
<td>Purchase of fuel at recognized stations</td>
<td>Availability of equipment and machinery maintenance plan</td>
<td></td>
<td>Verification of maintenance record by project engineers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suppress dust generation at project sites</td>
<td>Schedule of works is to limit</td>
<td>Frequency of watering of surfaces to reduce dust related impacts</td>
<td></td>
<td>Self-check by contractor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Switch off engines when not in use</td>
<td>Water surfaces several times a day to reduce dust at the site.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise pollution</td>
<td>Schedule of works is to be limited to daylight hours</td>
<td>Part of contract agreement for the contractors</td>
<td>Recorded grievances</td>
<td>Number of workers correctly and frequently using PPEs</td>
<td>Self-check by contractor</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance with the national emission levels/standard</td>
<td>Number of PPE procured for noise mitigation</td>
<td>Number of workers aware of the emissions standards of NEMA and complying with the same</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provision of PPE for workers for noise pollution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Train workers on the use of PPEs for noise mitigation and reprimand those not complying</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Impacts on landscape | Visual Impact Assessment (VIA) | Implementation of VIA and site maintenance and restoration plan plan | Quality of restored landscapes successfully restored |
| When necessary, undertake a Visual Impact Assessment to assess impact of infrastructure on landscape features and sense of place | Construction site maintenance and restoration plan. | Number of disturbed sites successfully restored |
| Landscaping of facilities after construction, and restoration of disturbed areas | | |

| Traffic impacts | Traffic Impact Assessment | Traffic incidence records | Number of drivers aware and familiar with the traffic safety plan |
| When necessary, undertake a Traffic Impact Assessment to assess impact of increased traffic | Purchase sound vehicles and trucks /machinery for project | Grievances Recorded | Percentage of drivers who have not committed a traffic offence for the last 6 months |
| Use only road worthy vehicles and trucks | Driver qualification recorded | | Number of compliance (traffic) inspection and checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory |
| Use experienced drivers | | | |
| Contractors must provide driver training | | | |

<p>| | Environmental Control Officer | Construction Operation | Environmental Assessment Practitioner |
| | Self-check by contractor | | Contractor /Project engineer |
| | | | SANParks |
| | | | iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority |
| | | | ECPTA |
| | | | LEDET |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Water pollution</th>
<th>Traffic Safety Plan</th>
<th>Waste management plan</th>
<th>Visibility of oil on water bodies</th>
<th>Increased water quality upstream and downstream shown by periodic measurements</th>
<th>Daily self-checks by contractors</th>
<th>Construction Operation</th>
<th>Private Sector Investor</th>
<th>ECPTA</th>
<th>LEDET</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No garbage/refuse, oily wastes, fuels/waste oils should be discharged into drains or water bodies</td>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td>Spill prevention and control plan</td>
<td>Procurement and installation of water monitoring and measuring gauges</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
<td>SANParks</td>
<td>iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel storage tanks/sites should be properly secured</td>
<td>Visibility of oil on water bodies</td>
<td>On site erosion observed</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Spot checks/audits by project engineers</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance and cleaning of vehicles, trucks and equipment should take place offsite.</td>
<td>Proposed actions implemented</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide toilet facilities for construction workers</td>
<td>Quality of water following periodic measurements</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction activities, including camps to include measures to control runoff</td>
<td>No of pollution incidences recorded</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water pollution</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>Waste management plan</td>
<td>Visibility of oil on water bodies</td>
<td>Increased water quality upstream and downstream shown by periodic measurements</td>
<td>Daily self-checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No garbage/refuse, oily wastes, fuels/waste oils should be discharged into drains or water bodies</td>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td>Spill prevention and control plan</td>
<td>Procurement and installation of water monitoring and measuring gauges</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
<td>SANParks</td>
<td>iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel storage tanks/sites should be properly secured</td>
<td>Visibility of oil on water bodies</td>
<td>On site erosion observed</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Spot checks/audits by project engineers</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance and cleaning of vehicles, trucks and equipment should take place offsite.</td>
<td>Proposed actions implemented</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provide toilet facilities for construction workers</td>
<td>Quality of water following periodic measurements</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction activities, including camps to include measures to control runoff</td>
<td>No of pollution incidences recorded</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Impact on fauna and flora**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact on fauna and flora</th>
<th>Traffic Safety Plan</th>
<th>Wildlife incidents recorded and reported to SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, ECPTA and LEDET.</th>
<th>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</th>
<th>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</th>
<th>Regular self-checks by contractor</th>
<th>Construction Operation</th>
<th>Private Sector Investor</th>
<th>ECPTA</th>
<th>LEDET</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Avoid access to sensitive habitat.</td>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid protected areas, critical habitats or areas with significant biodiversity (wetlands)</td>
<td>Visibility of oil on water bodies</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular inspection or monitoring should be carried out in sensitive areas e.g.</td>
<td>Proposed actions implemented</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If a sensitive habitat is discovered in the work area or vicinity, Project activities should cease.</td>
<td>Quality of water following periodic measurements</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The contractor should notify project engineers</td>
<td>No of pollution incidences recorded</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If a sensitive habitat is discovered in the work area or vicinity, Project activities should cease.</td>
<td>Water samples collected showing compliance to water pollution standards</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Construction Operation</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Environmental and Social Management Framework - ESMF**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impacts on cultural heritage/ archaeological interest /existing aquatic infrastructure and services</th>
<th>Inform contractor and train workers on chance finds</th>
<th>Pre-construction surveys / Chance finds procedure</th>
<th>Cultural/ archaeological resources/ existing infrastructure encounter incidence register</th>
<th>Number of workers familiar with the chance find procedures</th>
<th>Chance finds procedure under implementation</th>
<th>Preconstruction and construction and repairs/ recovery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- swamps/ wetlands the area prior to start of work.
- Ensure proper storage and handling of potentially hazardous materials (including oil).
- who will consult SANParks / iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority / ECPTA / LEDET.
- to determine the appropriate course of action.
- Hazardous material management plan/accident management plan.
- Awareness raising among contractor personnel
- Impacts on cultural heritage/ archaeological interest /existing aquatic infrastructure and services
- Private Sector Investor
- Environmental Assessment Practitioner
- Contractor /Project engineer
- SANParks
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority
- ECPTA
- LEDET
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impacts on recreation and public areas</th>
<th>Place notices and warning signs at working areas</th>
<th>ESMP</th>
<th>Grievance records</th>
<th>Recreational Facilities and areas restored/protected</th>
<th>Warning signs/notices in place</th>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>Private Sector Investor Contractors/Project engineers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impacts on Human Health/ Safety and Sanitation</td>
<td>Cover buckets of trucks carrying construction materials such as sand, quarry dust, etc. Use road worthy vehicles/trucks and experienced drivers/operators Active construction areas to be marked with high-visibility tape Backfill and or secure open trenches and excavated areas. Provide adequate sanitary facilities Provide PPEs for construction workers. Educate construction workers on site rules/regulation and hygiene and disease (HIV/AIDS) prevention.</td>
<td>ESMP Vehicle maintenance programme/plan in place Construction site management plan</td>
<td>ESMP Health and safety incident register</td>
<td>Grievance records</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labour related impacts (Employment)</td>
<td>Ensure that the local communities are given preferred employment opportunities employment and provided with training (skilled) to provide future labour in the project e.g. operation and maintenance</td>
<td>Human Resource Management Plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Involuntary Resettlement</td>
<td>As land take is not permitted by the project under any condition, there will be no involuntary resettlement.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restriction of access to resources/livelihoods (A Process Framework has been developed in accordance with ESS5 to guide community entrance into biodiversity stewardships which may result in restrictions to resources and livelihoods)</td>
<td>Minimize the impact through participatory planning of community conservation areas. As an integral part of project design, design and budget for alternative measures, in accordance with PF.</td>
<td>Process Framework</td>
<td>Criteria to be developed during social screening/social assessment as set out in PF</td>
<td>Change in livelihoods, income for households impacted</td>
<td>Audit of impact</td>
<td>Pre-declaration of community protection agreements</td>
<td>SANBI, implementing agency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Public Consultations
Stakeholder engagement is one of the central concepts of the Project. Stakeholder engagement remains critical to the project’s success. High expectations as to what the Protected Areas can deliver may lead to frustration with project results, including from actors involved in land claims, a sensitive political issue. Simultaneously, local stakeholders in many instances demonstrate negative perceptions about protected areas. The Project intends to help conserve natural habitats and wildlife of global value, while allowing the realization of the economic potential for social development of these natural assets. A number of stakeholder discussions and consultations have been undertaken since February 2019 with a wide range of stakeholders, including communities, Government agencies, GEF 7 partners and key stakeholder institutions to discuss project design and locations of key infrastructures. Details are provided in the main document under Chapter 9.2.

Project Implementation
Implementation of the project activities will be led by the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) as the project Executing Agency for the Government of South Africa. DEFF is mandated to provide leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community. Implementation of the project will be overseen by a joint Project Oversight Committee (POC). The joint (POC) will be chaired by DEFF, and will include representation from relevant government agencies and civil society organizations involved in implementing and/or co-financing the project.

The project will be managed through a Project Management Unit housed in DEFF. While implementation of the activities in the three biodiversity economy nodes, will be through the three Sub-Executing Agencies – South African National Parks (SANParks), South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) and iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, responsible for delivering on the desired intermediate results. Delivery on the subcomponent objectives will be coordinated by the three project node coordinators hosted by the sub-executing agencies, SANParks and iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority.

Two full-time Environment and Social Safeguards Officers in the PMU will support the Project Node Coordinators to implement the project safeguards and minimize risks.

As one of the sub-executing agencies, SANBI will also oversee work in the Eastern Cape project node on community stewardship and livelihoods, to be undertaken by the provincial conservation authority, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Authority (ECPTA). In the Greater Addo-Amathole Node in the Eastern Cape Province, project activities will thus be carried out both by the Addo Elephant National Park (through SANParks Head Office) and by ECPTA (through SANBI), with the work connected through landscape level coordination and investment planning across the entire node. The Project Node Coordinator will be contracted by SANParks, and will be based at the Port Elizabeth office of SANParks, but will service the entire node, including areas where ECPTA is working with local communities around the Great Fish River Nature Reserve, and conducting stewardship outreach in the surrounding landscape.
In the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node, activities will be carried out by the Kruger National Park (through SANParks Head Office) in the project node, guided by the wider Greater Kruger Strategic Development Framework, and in partnership with a wide range of government agencies, civil society and private sector partners, including traditional authorities and the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET) department of provincial government. The Project Node Coordinator will be contracted by SANParks and based at the Skukuza office of SANParks. In the Greater iSimangaliso Node, activities will be carried out by the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority in the buffer of the park and the node area in the northern half of the Park, in partnership with a wide range of stakeholders, including traditional authorities, local government, private tourism operators and the provincial conservation authority, Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife (EKZNW).

The Results Framework (RF) will guide day-to-day M&E and also evaluation analysis and reporting at midterm and completion. DEFF as the Executing Agency, through the Project Management Unit, has the overall responsibility for coordinating M&E and ensuring that data and information are produced on time and to the necessary quality. This includes timely liaison and follow up with the three Sub-Executing Agencies who will need to submit information and data to the PMU every 6 months. This submission process will be facilitated by the three Project Node Coordinators, whose terms of reference will include producing regular landscape-level activity reports that will inform project-level M&E, in conjunction with their hosting agencies (SANParks and iSimangaliso).
1 INTRODUCTION

The Republic of South Africa (RSA) through the National Treasury (NT) is seeking financing through a grant from the Global Environment Facility (GEF) to be administered by the World Bank for Catalyzing Financing and Capacity for the Biodiversity Economy around Protected Areas Project (hereafter referred as the Project) which is aimed at leveraging financial resources and improving capacity to implement the biodiversity economy and increase benefits from selected Protected Areas (PA) landscapes to local communities.

South Africa’s is one of most biodiverse countries in the world, and its biodiversity contributes significantly to the national economy, and to local livelihoods. With a varied geography ranging from plains and savannas to deserts and high mountains, South Africa’s ecosystems support over 95,000 species, and its rich biodiversity contributes significantly to the national economy, particularly through nature-based tourism (NBT). The total contribution of Travel and Tourism to South Africa’s gross domestic product (GDP) in 2016 is estimated at 9.3 percent (WTTC), a significant portion of which is directly linked to natural assets, particularly protected areas (PAs).\(^2\) Biodiversity and its habitats also contribute to the livelihood of the poorest segments of the population, by providing a range of goods, such as food, biomass fuel, and medicine; and services such as water. South Africa’s ecological infrastructure\(^3\) also increases resilience to climate shocks, by reducing the impact of extreme weather events such as drought and floods.

1.1 Purpose and Rationale of the ESMF

This ESMF seeks to establish a process of environmental and social screening which will permit the institutions in charge of the implementation of the sub projects to identify, assess and mitigate the environmental and social impacts of sub project investments. The ESMF also determines the institutional measures to be taken during the program implementation, including those relating to capacity building.

As project investments have not been clearly identified at this stage, hence an ESMF provides a general impact and risk identification framework to assist project implementers to screen the projects and institute measures to address adverse environmental and social impacts. This ESMF thus applies to all sub projects to be financed under the project. Specific information on project locations, land requirements, bio-physical features etc. when known at a later stage will trigger the preparation of Environmental and Social instruments.

---

\(^2\) The Kruger National Park, for instance, is also a global tourist destination currently receiving almost 1.9 million visitors per year, making it a major economic driver in the Mpumalanga and Limpopo provinces, providing for a wide range of value chain development opportunities in support of rural development.

\(^3\) Ecological infrastructure refers to naturally functioning ecosystems that deliver valuable services to people, such as water and climate regulation, soil formation and disaster risk reduction. It is the nature-based equivalent of built or hard infrastructure and can be just as important for providing services and underpinning socio-economic development. Ecological infrastructure includes healthy mountain catchments, rivers, wetlands, coastal dunes, and nodes and corridors of natural habitat, which together form a network of interconnected structural elements in the landscape.
1.2 Project Description

1.2.1 Sector and Institutional context

South Africa’s system of Protected Areas (PAs) covers an area of about almost 100,000 km² of land area and over 185,000 km² of marine area (20 percent of the national terrestrial territory, and 12 percent of the marine territory), and includes both formal PAs and informal Conservation Areas (CAs). This vast system of PAs is managed by a range of national conservation agencies such as South African National Parks (SANParks) and the iSimangaliso Wetland Authority, provincial government, and private and communal structures. South Africa harbors world-renown protected areas, such as the Kruger National Park, Addo Elephant National Park and the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, a World Heritage Site.

Protected Areas (PAs) have significant potential to contribute to the Biodiversity Economy and serve as local ‘development hubs’ by promoting economic activities in the landscape⁴ they are embedded in. Through nature-based tourism, PAs have the potential of contributing to the economy, and a multiplier impact on the well-being of people, especially rural communities living around PAs, through the creation of jobs, alternative opportunities for local economic development, education and activism for the protection of the valuable biodiversity of the PA system.

In addition to tourism, a key pillar of the biodiversity economy is the wildlife sector. The wildlife economy is centred on game and wildlife farming/ ranching activities that relate to the stocking, trading, breeding, and sustainable safari hunting⁵ of game, and all the services and goods required to support this value chain. The wildlife economy is regulated by the public sector and operationalized by the private sector with support from academic and research organizations. The wildlife sector has been growing consistently faster than the general economy, contributing USD203 mill to GDP in 2014⁶, with stable growth of 6% per annum in jobs from 2008 to 2013 (Wildlife Lab Report, 2016). The NBE Strategy estimated that the sector could reach a USD950 mill contribution to GDP and double the number of jobs by 2030. Specific targets for 2030 are to: (i) create 60,000 additional jobs, (ii) improve and develop 2 million hectares of private owned, communal and restituted land for conservation and commercial game ranching, (iii) enable USD475 mill in new equity in the sector - USD272 mill in game, and USD203 mill in fixed assets and infrastructure.

A targeted 300,000 heads of wildlife would be owned by black-empowered or black-owned ranches. Equity in the sector by communal landholders and land reform beneficiaries is

---

⁴ With the term ‘PAs landscapes’, the project refers to various types of landscapes that lie within and around PAs, encompassing different land uses, from PAs to bordering productive agriculture and forestry areas, to urban settlements. This approach is highly relevant to PAs, as most threats, including population pressure, come from outside their boundaries. This approach also calls for a stronger management present through multi-stakeholder coordination platforms that the project will promote.

⁵ Although managed safari hunting or trophy hunting is controversial, it remains one of the best ways to cover the costs of maintaining large area of intact natural habitat for wildlife, and is widely seen as a vital element of conservation across Southern Africa. According to the authors of a new study - Luc Hoffmann Institute (2020) Diversifying Local Livelihoods While Sustaining Wildlife: Exploring incentives for community-based conservation – “To date, trophy hunting and tourism have generated significant returns on a large scale to enable wildlife conservation on community-owned or community-managed land. With challenges facing both those models, there are no easy or obvious new business models that can generate the same returns on the same scale.”

⁶ The boom period from 2009 to 2014, in which exceptionally high prices were fetched in South Africa for game, especially colour variants, ended in 2015 when prices dropped sharply; but the sector has continued to grow, and overall turnover of formal game auctions nationwide in 2018 was still high at USD50.9 million.
seen as enabling improved income, skills development, institutional capacity building, entrepreneurship, food and environmental security. Promotion of more inclusive nature-based tourism development around the PA system will be prioritized so that rural communities historically excluded from commercial opportunities may instead share the benefits of living round these biodiversity hotspots, be included in the local socio-economic development process deriving from the sector, and become aware and active stewards of biodiversity conservation.

South Africa PAs are increasingly under threat, resulting in adverse impacts on biodiversity and ecosystems they harbor, on the rural population dependent on them, and on the broader regional and national economies. Unsustainable and illegal practices on biodiversity, which are among the main causes of loss and degradation of wildlife, are largely induced by: i) insufficient financing for effective PA management and to support sustainable rural development; ii) rural poverty, a lack of access to effective and sustainable livelihoods support (such as jobs, business support, direct payments from conservation), and the absence of meaningful livelihood alternatives; and iii) fragmented, non-coordinated, and incompatible land use planning and management, leading to sub-optimal land use management decisions, such as conversions in favor of non-conservation friendly activities, such as mining, agriculture, and livestock, among others.

A key threat to the integrity of PAs is poverty, leading to overexploitation of natural resources, including wildlife crime through poaching and overfishing. An estimated 9-12 million people live around PAs, mostly in rural settings, and face high levels of poverty, and high unemployment rates. A significant proportion of this population also depends on natural resources for part of their livelihoods. With lack of access to public goods, social services, credit, markets, and few employment opportunities, these rural communities tend to pose threats to PAs, by being involved in poaching, conversion and degradation of natural habitats, and overexploitation of natural resources. Wildlife crime specifically has broader implications on national security, social disruption, weakening of governance and institutional systems and is a major threat to those PAs who are affected.

The gender gaps in rural communities around PAs represent an additional challenge. According to the Stats SA Living Conditions Survey (2014/15) approximately half (49,2%) of the adult population were living below the upper-bound poverty line (UBPL), with 46,1% of women and 52,0% of men experiencing poverty. The three provinces in which project target landscapes fall experienced the highest headcount of adult poverty – Limpopo (67,5%), Eastern Cape (67,3%) and KwaZulu-Natal (60,7%). The severity of poverty measures were larger for female-headed households compared to households headed by males. Women are also disadvantaged in relation to land ownership; between 2005 and 2010, only 36 percent of the beneficiaries of the land redistribution and tenure program were women. The country has relative gender parity in access to primary and tertiary schooling. In fact, a recent study notes that more girls finish school and enter

---

7 As examples, unemployment exceeds ninety percent in some districts around KNP, and more than 50 percent of 3 million local people have no formal education. Eighty percent of the people living around iSimangaliso Wetland Park and over 50 percent of the people living along the Garden Route National Park live below the poverty line.

8 African Gender Development Index (AGDI) study.
institutions of higher learning. However, when examining employment statistics, more men are in wage paying jobs, in high paying jobs and in managerial or decision-making positions than women. The study also notes that becoming pregnant or having a baby is one of the main reasons for being out of school among girls aged 15–19. In rural areas, women are more likely than men to be engaged only in non-market activities (subsistence agriculture). Women are thus more likely than men to be doing unpaid economic work. The rate of gender-based violence is high, and femicide five times higher than the global average. Addressing the gender gap in rural communities around PAs hold the potential of ensuring greater sustainability of natural resources and granting significant improvements in communities’ livelihoods.

Local communities are mostly negatively impacted and realize limited value from living in the periphery of PAs. Negative impacts include, but are not limited to, (i) loss of land and competition for land (land rights and tenure issues), (ii) economic impacts associated with constraints on non-conservation related activities, (iii) health impacts associated with the prevalence of diseases, including higher risk of transmission between livestock (including small ruminants) and wildlife, as well as zoonotic diseases transmissible to humans, (iv) food security and physical security impacts associated with human/wildlife conflict including predation and crop raiding and cross-border theft (including stock theft), (v) safety and security and economic and social impacts associated with wildlife crime (and associated crime in villages), and (vi) service delivery impacts, in particular in cases where local governments shift resources away from the area due to expectations that PAs can provide services. Many of the communities living around PAs struggle to diversify their existing livelihoods options and find very limited opportunities.

The proposed project intends to support South Africa Government’s current objectives and efforts, by addressing a specific set of constraints with the potential of enabling aimed-at and tangible results. The current baseline scenario in project areas presents seriously threatened natural habitats and wildlife, and ongoing poaching and illegal wildlife trafficking (the latter tackled through Pillar 1 of the South Africa Country Project in the GEF7 Global Wildlife Program). This situation is mainly due to unsustainable and illegal practices – all of which are largely driven by widespread rural poverty, lack of alternatives, and negative perceptions about PAs by local stakeholders. By strengthening management of PAs and promoting opportunities for PA expansion accompanied by new livelihood opportunities – both through unlocking turnkey investments on community land in the tourism and game sectors, and through small business development, the project will contribute to a change in perceptions on the benefits of conservation. The project will help conserve natural habitats and wildlife of global value, while allowing at the same time these natural assets to realize their economic potential for social development.

The project will contribute to climate change adaptation. Climate change is already having an impact on South Africa, with increased frequency of severe drought and extreme flooding events in many parts of the country, and negative effects on food and water security, health and livelihoods that are disproportionately experienced by the poor, especially women and youth. Climate shocks such as marked increase in temperature, changes in precipitation and drought are expected to become more frequent and extreme.
This project will strengthen the adaptive capacity and climate change adaptation and resilience in communities living around selected PA landscapes, in two ways: (i) through entrepreneurial and business training in conservation-compatible business development that spreads household risk and avoids dependence on small-scale agriculture; and (ii) through promoting biodiversity stewardship with communal landholders in three targeted ‘biodiversity economy nodes’ in wider PA landscapes – resulting not only in enhanced habitats for wildlife, but also improved condition of natural ecosystems (e.g. enhanced vegetative cover, reversal of soil erosion), allowing infiltration of rain and improved hydrological services across these landscapes.

1.2.2 Proposed Development Objectives
The project development objectives (PDO) is to leverage financial resources and improve capacity to implement the Biodiversity Economy and increase benefits from selected PA landscapes to local communities. The project performance toward the PDO will be measured through three key outcome indicators detailed below:

i. Area of community land\(^9\) brought under biodiversity stewardship in protected area landscapes

ii. Volume of public and private sector resources leveraged\(^10\) for wildlife economy

iii. Number of small businesses in biodiversity economy nodes supported to start or expand operations

1.3 Project Components

The project will build biodiversity economy nodes across South Africa and scale these up, enhancing communities’ stake in wildlife conservation, through two approaches:

a) Catalyzing public and private sector resources. The project will support the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) to pilot, refine and scale up the concept of ‘biodiversity economy nodes’ throughout South Africa. Such nodes bring together a range of stakeholders in the landscapes where opportunities exist to grow the biodiversity economy (defined as including the wildlife economy, ecotourism and biotrade, for example in indigenous medicinal plants). Nodes allow the development of a shared vision for the biodiversity economy, providing a framework for forging new public-private-community partnerships and unlocking new resources. These may take the form of public sector investments, e.g. a new provincial road linking to an ecotourism facility, or municipal delivery of services to the site, as well as private sector investments e.g. an ecotourism lodge or venison-processing plant, wherever possible in co-ownership with land-owning communities. DEFF is currently developing a digital platform as a support mechanism for bringing together

---

\(^9\) **Community land** may include (i) communal land, held in trust by the Traditional Authority on behalf of clearly defined community/ies, in terms of the *Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act* (41 of 2003), or (ii) land rights owned by land reform beneficiaries with settled land claims in terms of the *Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act* (48 of 2003), and governed by a Communal Property Association or Development Trust.

\(^10\) **Resources leveraged** will include public and private sector investment (capital expenditure) leveraged during project implementation, above and beyond initially committed project co-finance, to be tracked and reported on annually during project implementation.
stakeholders and facilitating private sector investment in biodiversity economy nodes across South Africa nodes. The platform will provide (i) a catalogue of available investment opportunities, (ii) a coordination point to connect potential partners and (iii) a repository of needed compliance, legal and other support service information. The project will build on this co-financed initiative, using the Biodiversity Economy Investment Platform to help unlock anchor investments in the three project landscapes, which also form ‘biodiversity economy nodes’ under DEFF: the Greater Addo-Amathole Node in the Eastern Cape Province, the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node in Limpopo Province, and the Greater iSimangaliso Node in KwaZulu-Natal Province.

b) *Increasing benefits from PAs to local communities.* The project will put the vision of the biodiversity economy nodes into practice in the three target landscapes, bringing benefits to communities through the creation of jobs in the wildlife economy and ecotourism sectors. Wherever possible, such development will take place on land owned by communities or land reform beneficiaries, enabling communities to determine the terms for partnerships with private sector investors – through concessions or co-ownership and -management, the latter with investment by the private partner in building the community’s operational capacity. In addition to opportunities for job creation and community equity in anchor investments such as ecotourism, the project involves three areas of work that will provide benefits to communities across the three biodiversity economy nodes – in community stewardship, small business incubation and capacity building for leadership and governance. Significantly increasing benefits to local communities will contribute to changing their attitudes towards PAs, biodiversity and wildlife, developing their role as stewards of nature and participants in the wildlife and tourism economic sectors. This approach will include:

- **Job creation through stimulating major investments in the biodiversity economy businesses:** The national biodiversity economy investment platform, with targeted matchmaking efforts on the three biodiversity economy nodes supported through the project, will help unlock investment by private sector players, in partnership with communities who own land communally, or who have successfully settled land claims. In each target landscape, project resources will be used to capitalize a community equity share in an anchor investment related to the wildlife economy, such as a) an ecotourism lodge linked to game-ranching with sustainable off-take for live game sales, and guided game drives for tourists, or b) a luxury bush camp linked game-ranching with sustainable off-take for safari hunting opportunities, with associated taxidermy and venison-processing businesses. Communities will be supported to negotiate truly beneficial arrangements with concessionaires, or more innovative partnerships, for example involving a 20-year collaboration with tourism operators who are also impact investors, involving working alongside each other to operate the facilities and develop the community’s capacity to the point where it is ready eventually to the run the business on its own.

- **Undertaking targeted small business incubation in project nodes:** The project will build on the efforts of the Department of Small Business Development, and best practice models developed through two recent GEF
investments in South Africa, to provide support to the development of small and micro enterprises\(^{11}\) in the three ‘biodiversity economy nodes’. These models were developed under the recent project on “Development, Empowerment and Conservation in the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park and Surrounding Region” (World Bank-iSimangaliso) and the current project on “Improving Management Effectiveness of the Protected Area Network” (UNDP-SANParks). The two projects’ approaches to small business development have in common the following elements: (i) providing technical training to a large number of community entrepreneurs and would-be entrepreneurs, with a special focus on unemployed youth and women, to develop initial business plans; (ii) using a competitive process in which entrepreneurs “pitch” their ideas for establishing or growing a business, and those with the most merit as viable business propositions are selected for further support; (iii) addressing major obstacles to business success by ensuring that the businesses selected and supported are placed on a sustainable growth path by a) being integrated into the business value-chain of the Park or private tourism operators as suppliers; and b) being supported with a grant for purchasing of equipment and basic infrastructure; (iv) providing ongoing technical assistance to support the nascent business through the first 12-24 months of operation with technical and financial advice and working capital.

- **Strengthening governance capacity for equitable benefit sharing:** Communities across the three biodiversity nodes will receive training through the project to strengthen existing governance structures, or to support the formation of new structures where this is requested by the community. The training will build on the lessons learnt through the leadership governance training program being implemented through the current GEF-financed project on “Improving Management Effectiveness of the Protected Area Network”. Beneficiary structures will include youth, women’s and business groupings, as well as structures for governance of communally held land – such as Communal Property Associations, Development Trusts, or Special Purpose Vehicles established under the above structures to ring-fence income and expenditure in the operation of specific commercial ventures. The training will cover the principles of good governance, leadership and management, communication and conflict resolution, and will provide specific financial, legal and business training as required. Objectives of the training interventions in the nodes will include growing effective community leadership and empowering community representatives to negotiate and uphold equitable terms in new public-private-community partnerships.

c) **Facilitating community stewardship to expand wildlife habitat:** The project will support specific communities (tentatively the communities of Mabasa and Makhasa in

---

\(^{11}\) **Definitions** in terms of the *National Small Enterprises Act (29 of 2004)*, “micro-businesses” have five or fewer employees and a turnover of up to ZAR 100,000. “Very small businesses” employ between 6 and 20 employees, while “small businesses” employ between 21 and 50 employees. The upper limit for turnover in a small business varies from ZAR 1,000,000 in the Agricultural sector to R13,000,000 in the Catering, Accommodations and other Trade sectors.
KwaZulu-Natal, Gidjana, Bevhula and Shangoni in Limpopo, and Enon-Bersheba and Brakfontein in the Eastern Cape) to conduct intra-community consultations on the optimal responsible use of / livelihood options for their land going forward. Support will be provided to explore options – for example, to utilize suitable portions of the land for tourism infrastructure, agriculture and agri-processing, and to set aside other portions which have valuable biodiversity and/or provide suitable habitat for biodiversity-compatible land uses like game-ranching and sustainable resource use – through concluding biodiversity stewardship agreements with provincial or national conservation authorities. The project aims to support community clusters in the three biodiversity economy nodes to set aside at least 20,000 hectares of land in total, either through formal declaration as Protected Areas or through ‘softer’ agreements to form Conservation Areas. The project will include technical assistance to communities on maintaining the land in a good ecological condition, harvesting of specific species on a sustainable basis where appropriate, generating income from the land through equitable business ventures with private sector partners, and also managing potential conflict between humans and wildlife / impacts from damage-causing animals (the latter especially in the case of new game-ranching ventures).

1.3.1 Project Components

The project’s geographical focus is at two scales – firstly in selected target landscapes, and secondly at national level for replication and scale-up. The three project landscapes also correspond to ‘biodiversity economy nodes’ as defined by DEFF and are: (i) the Greater Addo-Amathole Node in the Eastern Cape Province, (ii) the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node in Limpopo Province, and (iii) the Greater iSimangaliso Node in KwaZulu-Natal Province (see Annex 9 for project map). Through supporting multi-stakeholder platforms for coordination, planning and investment in the biodiversity economy nodes, the project will support an Integrated Landscape Management approach, which recognizes the value of connected natural resource management across different land uses at the landscape level as a basis for enhancing people’s livelihoods, security and resilience to climate variability and change. The three components are as follows:

- Component 1. Build biodiversity economy nodes for community stewardship and livelihoods
- Component 2. Grow the biodiversity economy nationally to enhance communities’ stake in wildlife conservation
- Component 3. Project management and monitoring

1.3.2 Component 1. Build biodiversity economy nodes for community stewardship and livelihoods

This component is designed to demonstrate DEFF’s biodiversity economy nodes concept in the three project sites through (i) improving stakeholder coordination and aligning investment; (ii) channelling funding and technical assistance to small-business development to improve economic activity and create jobs; (iii) improving benefit sharing to local communities through strengthened governance models; and (iv) expanding the PAs
estate through South Africa’s stewardship program. Delivery on the subcomponent objectives will be coordinated by the three project node coordinators hosted by the sub-executing agencies, SANParks and iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority.

Subcomponent 1.1 Support multi-stakeholder coordination platforms to develop shared vision for biodiversity economy nodes on land use and economic development

Activities under this subcomponent aim to bring together stakeholders around a shared vision for the biodiversity economy in each of the three project nodes – the Greater Addo to Amathole Node, the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node, and the Greater-iSimangaliso Node. Stakeholders will come together to: (i) coordinate actions around a shared vision of the biodiversity economy for the node through a multi-stakeholder structure; (ii) produce a Biodiversity Economy Node Master Plan for the node, linked to municipal planning and district service delivery; and (iii) facilitate and align public and private investments in fulfilment of the Master Plan through conducting feasibility studies. The project node coordinator will be responsible for facilitating these activities:

a) **Capacity development of coordination structures will be undertaken to develop and implement a shared vision of the biodiversity economy** for each node, mobilizing resources and aligning investments to turn the vision into reality. Each of the three nodes will establish a coordination structure, following or adapting the model of the Umfolozi Biodiversity Economy Node (UBEN) in KwaZulu-Natal, which holds quarterly meetings of its coordination structure, including a wide range of representatives, including local government, traditional authorities, community groups, local businesses, national departments and conservation agencies. The project node coordinators will be responsible for holding capacity development workshops in the first year of operation, facilitating regular meetings, and reporting on the structure’s progress on planning and investments.

b) **A Biodiversity Economy Node Master Plan, linked to municipal planning and district service delivery, will be produced for each node.** The project node coordinator will facilitate a process, guided by the coordination structure, and with support from a project spatial planning advisor hosted by SANBI (see Subcomponent 2.2), to develop a shared vision, and express this in the form of a spatial Master Plan, which can be updated annually. The content of the Master Plan will also be shared with municipalities in the node – aiming to integrate relevant goals and actions into processes for updating municipal Integrated Development Plans (IDP), Spatial Development Frameworks (SDF) and Local Economic Development (LED) plans. The project will also ensure that goals and actions of the Master Plan are also integrated into the Government’s new District-Based Service Delivery Model, launched in October 2019. Spatial plans from the local and district municipalities will also be used to guide

---

12 A number of pieces of legislation govern development and spatial planning at national, provincial and local levels, governed by principles set out in the Development Facilitation Act (Act 67 of 1995). Since 2000, all municipalities are required by law to have an Integrated Development Plans (IDP), updated every five years, and supported by a Spatial Development Framework (SDF) and implemented through Local Economic Development (LED) plans. The project will ensure that biodiversity economy goals and actions are integrated into these municipal planning processes, and also into the Government’s new District-Based Service Delivery Model, launched in October 2019.
the process of producing the Master Plan, with the SANBI-hosted advisor providing GIS support and access to relevant data layers. Support will also be provided to site-specific Conservation and Development Framework plans for community-owned land – to inform conservation and development land use options on the piece of the land, after which more detailed feasibility studies can be conducted for specific income-generating activities.

c) **Facilitating and aligning public and private investments in fulfilment of the Master Plan** will be achieved over time, through dialogues facilitated by the project node coordinator in each node, and through detailed feasibility studies and transaction advice for new public and private investments. During project preparation, “anchor” investments in each node were identified and a short list has been generated. Two examples from the Addo-Amathole Node include a feasibility study for refurbishing an abattoir and meat-processing plant that could service private game reserves undertaking culling, small-scale livestock farmers, and newly established game-ranching operations undertaken by communities;\(^{13}\) and a multi-land use plan for a large (over 5,000 hectares) land reform beneficiaries’ property, including citrus farming, game-ranching with sustainable off-take, guided game drives and ecododge facilities. Funds will be made available for up to 10 pre-feasibility studies and 5 detailed feasibility studies in each node, the latter for those with promising results. The process will involve: (i) completing a pre-feasibility study to determine whether a proposed venture is appropriate and viable, and if so, what business model should be followed; and (ii) undertaking a more detailed feasibility study and providing transaction advice – either to access public finance (e.g. EPIP Program\(^ {14}\)) or package the opportunity so that it is “private sector investment-ready”, or a combination of these two options. The detailed studies will include appropriate siting, design, costing, mitigation of environmental impacts of investment opportunities, as well as business viability, analysis of supply pipeline, and market analysis for value-added products.

**Subcomponent 1.2 Promote small business incubation across each node**

This subcomponent focuses on small business incubation in the project nodes, all three of which have high unemployment and include communities that have historically been excluded from access to training, finance, and markets. Beneficiaries of this support will include 70 percent youth, and 58 percent women\(^ {15}\), in order to further redress imbalances in access to economic opportunities in these rural economies. Project funding will support the development of a comprehensive package of small-business support services, which will build on the efforts of the Department of Small Business Development, and best

\(^{13}\) In addition to producing meat, which could be sold to local markets, such processing plants could provide opportunities for spin-off businesses in by-products, for example from game skins, hooves, and horns.

\(^{14}\) EPIP is DEFF’s Environmental Protection and Infrastructure Programme, focusing on infrastructure-related projects that contribute towards environmental protection, conservation and sustainability, while creating work opportunities and providing skills development. EPIP public investments mobilized in the three nodes will provide significant co-finance to the project.

\(^{15}\) See Annex 1: Results Framework for justification of disaggregated and differentiated targets.
practice models developed through two recent GEF investments in South Africa\textsuperscript{16}, to provide support to the development of small and micro enterprises\textsuperscript{17} in the three project nodes. The sub-executing agencies will use their own procurement processes to undertake a competitive selection process for these service providers, who may be non-governmental organizations or consulting firms, to ensure that the selected providers (i) have the necessary skills and track record, (ii) have a presence on the ground or experience working with the relevant communities, (iii) provide value for money and (iv) are well aligned with the project objectives and orientation towards community empowerment. The service provider’s work in each node will be overseen by the project node coordinator, and guided by the multi-stakeholder coordination structure in each node.

The model involves the following elements: (i) providing technical training to a large number of community entrepreneurs and would-be entrepreneurs, with a special focus on unemployed youth and women, to develop initial plans for business start-up or expansion; (ii) using a competitive process in which entrepreneurs “pitch” their ideas for establishing or growing/improving a business, and the best biodiversity economy proposals are provided with targeted support; (iii) ensuring that the businesses selected and supported are placed on a sustainable growth path by mentoring them to get their businesses to the point where they are turning a profit and can sustain themselves.

a) **Training on business planning / expansion**: A training course will be delivered by the service provider, under the guidance of the project node coordinator, to 150 existing and would-be entrepreneurs in each project node. Trainings will develop participants’ understanding of social, economic and environmental sustainability, and will provide hands-on support to develop a business development or improvement plan. An emphasis will be placed on practical skills such as market research, business planning, marketing and advertising, cash flow management, stock control and security, supply chain agreements, access to finance, and employee management. Participants may be individuals running small or micro businesses\textsuperscript{18}, or cooperatives whose ambitions include going into business, e.g. youth organizations, women’s groups, farmer cooperatives, or “stokvel” savings associations. At least 58% of these beneficiaries will be women, and 70% will be youth. A call for participants will be put out by the service providers using the communications channels of the conservation agencies, district municipalities and traditional authorities.

b) **Selection for further support**: Promising business development / expansion concepts of a general nature emerging from the three nodes will be fed into the national pipeline.

\textsuperscript{16} The REAP model was developed under the recent project on “Development, Empowerment and Conservation in the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park and Surrounding Region” (World Bank/iSimangaliso); and the SEED model in the current project on “Improving Management Effectiveness of the Protected Area Network” (UNDP-SANParks)

\textsuperscript{17} Definitions in terms of the National Small Enterprises Act (29 of 2004), “micro-businesses” have five or fewer employees and a turnover of up to ZAR 100,000. “Very small businesses” employ between 6 and 20 employees, while “small businesses” employ between 21 and 50 employees. The upper limit for turnover in a small business varies from ZAR 1,000,000 in the Agricultural sector to R13,000,000 in the Catering, Accommodations and other Trade sectors.

\textsuperscript{18} Micro-businesses have 5 or fewer employees, and small businesses have 6-50 employees (with those between 6 and 20 classified as very small) in terms of the National Small Enterprises Act (29 of 2004).
for small business development support, co-financed by the Department for Small Business Development, to receive further support. This process will be coordinated by the three project node coordinators, in collaboration with investment advisors co-financed by DEFF and working on the national investment catalogue (see Subcomponent 2.1). Viable business concepts that fit directly into growing biodiversity economy value chains in the nodes and promise multiplier effects in the local economy will be invited to “pitch” to the multi-stakeholder coordination platform, and the most promising ones will be selected to receive targeted support over an extended period during the project.

c) **Mentorship and grants:** Targeted support will be provided to 25-30 selected businesses in each node, including both mentorship and grant funding for required equipment and small-scale infrastructure. Mentorship will focus on providing ongoing advice and support, and helping with integration into existing value chains. The new or scaled up ventures will be derisked though the project providing ongoing technical assistance for a 24-month period, followed by an on-request support service thereafter. Grants will be provided with project funding for both equipment and small-scale infrastructure, and for working capital up to the anticipated break-even point of the business. Further derisking will occur by ensuring (as part of the node coordinator’s role, in conjunction with the small business training service provider), that the businesses selected and supported are placed on a sustainable growth path by being integrated into the business value-chain of the Park or private tourism operators as suppliers, with support to the negotiation of off-take agreements / supply contracts.

**Subcomponent 1.3 Strengthen governance capacity and ownership for equitable benefit sharing**

This subcomponent aims to improve the benefit sharing of the Biodiversity Economy within each of the project nodes, in particular with the communities that live in and around the PAs, by (i) supporting equity ownership by communities in anchor investments; (ii) improving the governance capacity of communities; and (iii) providing capacity building to strengthen leadership capacity of communities, and (iv) including a targeted effort to build women’s leadership roles. These training and support processes will be facilitated by the project node coordinators, assisted by service providers, who may be non-governmental organizations or consulting firms. The sub-executing agencies will use their own procurement processes to undertake a competitive selection process for these service providers. Their work will be overseen by the project node coordinators, and guided by the multi-stakeholder coordination structures in the nodes.

a) **Enabling community equity share in an anchor investment:** Project funding will be made available in the Greater iSimangaliso Node for equity ownership in one anchor investment. The conditions for allocating funding for this purpose will be clearly specified in a document to be drawn up by the Project Node Coordinator and approved.

---

19 For example, this could take the form of a low-impact high-end ecotourism lodge for visitors wishing to experience the unique natural and cultural heritage of the northern region of the park from Lake Sibaya to Kosi Bay.

20 Since there are three potential land claimant communities in the node, it is likely that at least one of them will meet the criteria. If none meet the criteria, the funds will be used for further small business incubation in the node.
by the Project Steering Committee, and will require that the community in question (i) has decided to set aside land for conservation-compatible purposes (potentially, but not necessarily, through a Conservation Agreement); (ii) has collective ownership of the land (vested in the traditional authority) or has settled a land claim and has ownership transferred into its name; (iii) has a functional and effective governance mechanism operational; (iv) is eligible to receive public sector investment, e.g. EPIP funding or SANParks game donations, if necessary to make the anchor investment viable; and (v) has done the initial pre-feasibility work to ascertain potential for private sector involvement in co-financing the investment. Where such conditions are met and the project Steering Committee agrees to transfer the project resources to purchase shares on behalf of the community, technical support will be provided for the negotiations process and for drafting of legal documentation, banking arrangements and other transactional support, as well as support to access government incentives. The model developed will be written up as a case study and made available for use in the EPIP program at national scale, supported by the project knowledge and learning officer hosted by SANBI (see Subcomponent 2.2).

b) **Strengthen general community governance capacity in nodes:** Communities across the three biodiversity nodes will receive training through the project to strengthen governance structures including youth, women’s and business groupings, as well as structures for governance of communally held land – including the nodes’ Communal Property Associations and Development Trusts, as well as any Special Purpose Vehicles to be established during project implementation under the above structures to ringfence income and expenditure in running specific commercial ventures. The basic leadership and governance course will be offered to approximately 25 community structures in each of the 3 nodes, with an average of 10 participants each. The capacity development program will be delivered via trainings in each node, and will focus on principles and techniques of good governance; leadership and management; communication and conflict resolution; with customized additional modules (as required in each node) on the biodiversity economy, integrated landscape management, and combating poaching and illegal wildlife trafficking.

c) **Targeted and extended leadership capacity development:** A more focused year-long training program will be designed and delivered to boost capacity for project management, consultation, communication, reporting and financial management skills for the leaders of land claimant communities and communal landholders within the project nodes. During project preparation, the following communities have been identified to receive extended governance capacity support: the communities of Mabaso and Makhasa in KwaZulu-Natal, Gidjana, Bevhula and Shangoni in Limpopo, and Enon-Bersheba and Brakfontein in the Eastern Cape. The extended capacity development program is expected to involve 2 leadership structures in each of the 7

---

21 Including tax deduction incentives for biodiversity stewardship
22 The specific list of community groupings to receive training in each node will be identified once community facilitators are in place, within the first six months of project implementation.
23 The training will build on the lessons learnt through the leadership governance training program being implemented through the current GEF-financed project on “Improving Management Effectiveness of the Protected Area Network”. 
target communities, with an average of 5 participants, bringing the total number of participants to 70. The program will aim to empower leaders in these communities to have a strong voice in negotiations on new partnerships and investments, to understand and engage on the financial and legal aspects of proposals, to monitor the flow of agreed benefits and take action where problems arise, and to ensure that benefits are equitably and transparently shared amongst the community, including with socially-marginalized groups, youth, women, female-headed households, disabled people, and the elderly. Where necessary, at the specific request of a community, additional legal support can be made available to help establish a new structure or strengthen an emerging structure.

d) **A women’s leadership program will also be offered in the target communities.** Because it is anticipated that the current leadership of the existing community structures will have significantly more male than female members, a special women’s leadership course will also be offered in the 7 target communities. This will help to train new leaders for possible future election to community governance structures, and build useful skills to maximize women’s role in responding to small business development opportunities. The women’s leadership program will involve approximately 25 women in each of the 7 target communities, bringing the total number of participants to 175. The program will include general elements on leadership, governance, conflict resolution and communication, as well as business and family planning, building confidence for public speaking, and digital and financial literacy. The course will be delivered in two cohorts to accommodate women who have young children – with some members of each cohort taking turns to provided cooperative childcare facilities for the other cohort, ensuring that the children stay safe and that their mothers can participate with full focus. The community cooperative childcare approach will be utilized wherever relevant in delivery of the project, forming an in-kind contribution by communities.

**Subcomponent 1.4 Facilitate community stewardship to expand wildlife habitat**

This subcomponent aims to support communities to conclude biodiversity stewardship agreements and expand land under conservation in the nodes. This support involves: (i) facilitating the biodiversity stewardship process, from consultation and negotiation, potentially all the way through to declaration of a new conservation area or protected area; and (ii) providing post-declaration support to community stewardship sites for income generation and ecosystem management, and a sustainability plan. This work will be led by project stewardship facilitators in the relevant conservation agency in each project node, supported by the project node coordinators.

a) **Support to landowners in the project nodes to secure land with valuable biodiversity and wildlife habitat for conservation.** This support will include, but is not limited to, seven target land-owning communities across the three nodes, who were identified during project preparation as being ready or interested in entering into a biodiversity stewardship agreement with a national or provincial conservation

---

24 These are the Mabaso and Makhasa communities in KwaZulu-Natal, the Gidjana, Bevhula and Shangoni communities in Limpopo, and the Enon-Bersheba and Brakfontein communities in Eastern Cape.
agency. A stewardship agreement involves a commitment to conserving and maintaining valuable biodiversity on the owners’ land, allowing only biodiversity-compatible land uses, such as game-ranching, nature-based tourism, or sustainable offtake of wildlife and harvesting of medicinal plants. The project aims to secure either Conservation Areas, or more formal Biodiversity Agreements or Protected Environments over at least 20,000 hectares of community land within the three economy nodes. To achieve this, the subcomponent will support project stewardship and livelihoods facilitators hosted by the conservation agencies in each node, to explore options with landowners and communities for optimal, responsible utilization of their land. The agencies will also facilitate the necessary legal and technical support for the signing of conservation agreements and/or the declaration of new Protected Areas. Stewardship work in the nodes will also involve landholders whose land is important for wildlife connectivity and/or as strategic water source areas supplying the parks and land reform beneficiaries – crucial for derisking project investments in biodiversity economy ventures in already water-stressed areas that are likely to be affected by climate change.

b) Technical assistance for management and monitoring of community conservation land: Once biodiversity stewardship agreements have been concluded, the project will include ongoing technical assistance and extension services to communities to achieve the following: (i) design, implement, and monitor land-use management plans; (i) restore and/or maintain the veld for grazing productivity and ecosystem functioning; (ii) undertake infrastructure planning and development; (iii) implement a system for sustainable off-take and harvesting rates and procedures, e.g. for timber, medicinal plants, game; (iv) equip youth as community monitors of ecosystem condition and functioning; and (v) manage potential interaction with damage-causing animals. This ecological planning and monitoring will be linked with business planning so that all income and expenditure streams can be considered together in the community’s financial planning. The community will also be assisted to negotiate a long-term arrangement involving NGO or conservation authority support post-project, and to access government stewardship incentives such as tax deductions and help with clearing of alien invasive vegetation. In addition to this work on landscape management and ecological monitoring, the stewardship communities will receive business development support through investment unlocked in Subcomponent 1.1, through small business incubation in Subcomponent 1.2, and through leadership governance training in Subcomponent 1.3, all brought together with the support of the project node.

25 Protected Areas in this context are defined as geographical areas that are formally protected by the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (NEMPA) (Act 57 of 2003). They are managed mainly for biodiversity conservation, but also allow for specific additional land uses, for example, a Protected Environment under NEMPA, or a 5-30 year Biodiversity Agreement in terms of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004). Conservation Areas are not formally protected by the NEMPA Act, but are nevertheless managed at least partly for biodiversity conservation, and contribute to the broader conservation estate. An example would be a Community Conservation Area established through a Conservation Agreement between a community governance structure and a provincial or national conservation agency.

26 For example, to utilize suitable portions of the land for tourism infrastructure, agriculture and agri-processing, and to set aside other portions which have valuable biodiversity and/or provide suitable habitat for biodiversity-compatible land uses like game-ranching and sustainable resource use.
coordinator and stewardship and livelihoods facilitators.

1.3.3 Component 2: Growing the wildlife economy nationally to enhance communities’ stake in wildlife conservation

This component is designed to share lessons learned from the three project nodes – between the nodes, at national level, and internationally through the Global Wildlife Program – for replication and scale-up. The component is implemented at national level by the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI). DEFF will be responsible for Subcomponent 2.1 “Promoting the wildlife sector of the biodiversity economy, drawing on best practice from the nodes” and SANBI for Subcomponent 2.2 “Knowledge exchange across nodes and capturing learning on community stewardship and biodiversity economy”. This work will be coordinated at national level by the Project Manager in the DEFF-hosted Project Management Unit.

Subcomponent 2.1 Promoting the wildlife sector of the biodiversity economy, drawing on best practice from the nodes

This subcomponent focuses in on a key sub-sector of the biodiversity economy – the wildlife sector, prioritized by DEFF because of its massive potential for growth and transformation, and for contributing to the country’s conservation targets, as well as the significant barriers to realizing this potential. This subcomponent includes multi-stakeholder collaboration to a) pilot implementation of an emerging national game meat strategy in the nodes; b) upgrade the national extension system for wildlife SMMEs, using the three project nodes as pilots; c) pilot a new interactive interface for the biodiversity economy digital platform, with SMME participants and content from the nodes; and d)

---

27 As one of the three sub-executing entities for the project, SANBI will also oversee work in the Eastern Cape project node on community stewardship and livelihoods, to be undertaken by the Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Authority (ECPTA). Funds will be channeled from SANBI to ECPTA to carry out this work (see Project Budget for details).

28 This is also referred to in South Africa as the Wildlife Economy, and along with the Bioprospecting Sector, makes up the Biodiversity Economy, as defined by DEFF. For purposes of clarity in this PAD, the terms “biodiversity economy” and “wildlife sector” are used to avoid any confusion. The Wildlife Economy is defined as “the economy that drives rural development and prosperity through the sustainable use of wildlife assets, the socio economic benefits of ecotourism, co-managed conservation areas and related ancillary services to protected areas including the processing of such resources into secondary products that are consumed and traded domestically and internationally” (Wildlife Economy Lab, 2017).

29 Wildlife ranching, activities and products employed 100,000 people and generated USD617 million a year (0,27% of GDP) in 2017, and has significant untapped potential, in terms of safari hunting and related ecotourism, game meat for domestic and export markets, and processing of by-products. The multi-stakeholder Wildlife Economy Lab set the target of “an inclusive, sustainable and responsive wildlife economy that grows at 10% p.a. until at least 2030” doubling the number of jobs and creating opportunities for ownership by Previously Disadvantaged Individuals (30% of wildlife businesses and 4,000 new SMMEs, with 5 million hectares of land in wildlife-compatible use. And 3.5% animal population net growth per annum (Wildlife Economy Lab, 2017).

30 These include lack of ownership and inefficient utilization of land, lack of infrastructure development and “start-up” game, lack of organized governance by communities and emerging entrepreneurs, lack of technical skills, business support and effective partnership models, and lack of access to finance and incentives for transformation.
facilitate participation by South Africa in the Global Wildlife Program, including regional and international events. This work will be overseen by the Project Manager in the PMU, whose costs are shared between Component 3 and this subcomponent.

a) **Implementing a new national game meat strategy.** DEFF is cooperating with the Department of Agriculture, Rural Development and Land Reform (DARDLR) and a range of private sector and civil society stakeholders, to formalize the South African game meat industry, and create a network of game meat processing facilities (targeting 110 new facilities producing 18,500 tons of venison with 2,500 new jobs and USD110 million in annual revenue within 4 years). A national game meat strategy will soon be under preparation, co-financed by DEFF. This subcomponent will enable the Directorate: Wildlife Economy in DEFF to develop an implementation plan for the new strategy, using the three project nodes as a pilot. A service provider contracted by DEFF will draw on the emerging strategy, existing market and value chain analyses, and extensive work done by NGOs on sustainable red meat initiatives and certification, to advise the target communities, conservation agencies and local entrepreneurs who are forming partnerships to expand the supply of game meat through new game-ranching activities, and to establish new abattoir / venison processing and by-products facilities in each node. The nodes will provide a “living laboratory” for the roll-out of the new game meat strategy and feed lessons into the national process.

b) **Developing an extension system for wildlife SMMEs** nationally, using the nodes as pilots: Building on the goal coming out of the Wildlife Economy Lab to coordinate existing support mechanisms for new entrants under a ‘Wildlife Support Unit’, DEFF is collaborating with DARDLR and partners to develop a nationwide extension support service program for the wildlife sector, including a mentorship program and a business support program along the value-chain pipeline. This subcomponent will enable the development of a pilot extension system through engaging a service provider. The provider will collaborate closely with the three project nodes, assess capacity needs and gaps, and test out elements of the emerging national support package with selected beneficiaries – small and medium businesses owned by previously disadvantaged individuals engaged in wildlife ranching, live game sales, safari hunting, venison production, value addition for by-products and related industries. This learning on capacity needs and effective techniques for training and mentoring will be applied in developing a set of training manuals for the national extension program, guidelines for the mentorship program, and course modules for the business development program.

---

31 SA exports 600-2000 Tons of venison per year, valued at USD4 million to USD14 million. New Zealand exports 40 000 T, and it is estimated that markets, especially in Western Europe, can absorb 60 000 T more p.a.

32 A certification scheme for the wildlife economy is also under development through DEFF and the Wildlife Forum (coming out of the Wildlife Lab), in partnership with communities and private sector game ranchers.

33 SMMEs are defined as: Businesses with between 1 and 4 employees (excluding the owner) are referred to as “Micro”; businesses with between 5 and 9 employees are referred to as “Small”; businesses with between 10 and 49 employees are referred to as “Medium”. “SMME” refers to the combination of “Own-account”, “Micro”, “Small” and “Medium” businesses and includes all businesses with between 0 and 49 employees.

34 See definitions of business sizes in Annex 1: Results Framework. These beneficiaries are likely to be operating large scale businesses than the micro and very small business owners targeted in Subcomponent 1.2 for small business incubation (which is also not limited to or providing specialized support on the wildlife sector).
The deliverable will be a full set of materials and a “train-the-trainer” kit, ready for roll-out through extension workers from various government agencies and NGO partners.

c) **Developing content for and piloting interactive use of digital platform with wildlife SMMEs.** The Chief Directorate: Biodiversity Economy and Sustainable Use in DEFF has initiated, and is co-financing, a digital platform as a support mechanism for bringing together stakeholders and facilitating private sector investment in biodiversity economy nodes across South Africa, with a special focus on the wildlife and bioprospecting sectors. The platform will provide (i) a catalogue of available investment opportunities, profiling enterprises in various stages of project preparation; (ii) a coordination point to connect potential partners and financiers; and (iii) a repository of needed compliance, legal and other support service information. The project will help to develop content for the digital platform through the work in the nodes, including a short video documentary series to be developed in Subcomponent 2.2. The subcomponent will also engage service providers to develop the website to the next level, enabling an interactive user experience on the digital platform. The beta site will be piloted with the SMME participants in the emerging extension support service program for the wildlife sector, and adjusted for optimal use value. New features will include: a mobile application, an online marketplace, videos on related opportunities and processes, and an online marketing campaign for game meat. The interactive features of the upgraded digital platform will also facilitate engagement between SMME owners and potential investors, leveraging additional investment in the project nodes and beyond.

**Subcomponent 2.2 Knowledge exchange across nodes and capturing learning on community stewardship and biodiversity economy**

This knowledge and learning sub-component involves four areas of work, which collectively aim to capture learning and best practice emerging from the three project nodes, supporting them to distil this into shared knowledge products for the project, and then disseminate the learning widely through SANBI’s networks, in partnership with DEFF and the project sub-executing agencies. This work will be overseen by SANBI because of its strong technical and thought leadership capacity, in its role as a sub-executing agency, to provide the technical “glue” to the project as a whole.

a) **Developing capacity for community stewardship, in the nodes and nationally.** This work will be overseen by a project national biodiversity economy stewardship advisor, hosted by SANBI, who will have three roles: (i) to advise the stewardship facilitators in the project nodes, (ii) to pilot a national training course for extension officers, and (iii) to oversee consultancies developing tools that showcase best practices in community stewardship emerging from the nodes. The advisor will cooperate with the sub-executing agencies to train the 4-6 more junior stewardship facilitators being hired in the project nodes, will provide them with an ongoing source of technical advice and support through regular visits, and will link them to sources of cutting-edge knowledge and expertise. The advisor will develop and deliver a formalized interactive training course, based on SANBI’s community of practice experience, for in-service training of
10-12 junior professional extension officers (working for provincial conservation agencies and NGOs) as a pilot to test this approach for capacity development in the sector. The advisor will also oversee 2-3 consultancies for the development of best practice tools emerging from the project nodes: showcasing models for innovative legal, co-management and stewardship agreements, and will be responsible for disseminating these tools – nationally through SANBI’s networks, and internationally through the DEFF-based PMU’s facilitation of South Africa’s participation in the GWP (see Subcomponent 2.1).

b) **Supporting communities in the nodes to share experiences, draw on national best practice and disseminate learning.** This work will be overseen by a project national biodiversity economy knowledge and learning officer, hosted by SANBI. This officer will have two roles: (i) running a series of community learning exchanges between the nodes; and (ii) overseeing a consultancy producing a set of knowledge products focused on biodiversity economy livelihoods linked to community stewardship. An anticipated 3-4 learning exchange visits within South Africa will be facilitated per year, with a focus on the participating communities in the project nodes, as well as other land claims beneficiaries and other communal landholders involved in the biodiversity economy from whom they can learn. These learning exchanges will build on the baseline of the government co-financed Biodiversity Stewardship and Land Reform Initiative which holds an annual conference for communities involved in biodiversity stewardship. The GEF funds will enable more targeted exchange visits between particular communities identified as having specific things to learn from each other, for example, in relation to the operation of a guided game drive system, or the negotiation of a new concession model with a private lodge operator. Each exchange visit will result in the production of a report and/or short video. The officer will oversee a consultancy producing a series of documentary videos, learning briefs and a lessons learnt publication, based on the exchange program, in collaboration with the project node coordinators.

c) **Building institutional capacity for spatial planning and mainstreaming in biodiversity economy nodes.** This work will be overseen by a project national biodiversity economy spatial planning advisor, hosted by SANBI. This advisor’s main role will be to help build the institutional capacity of SANParks and iSimangaliso as the sub-executing agencies coordinating the nodes. This will be achieved by providing a technical advice service to the project node coordinators and their teams on (i) tools and techniques for conducting participatory land use planning with communities in the nodes, to produce site-specific Conservation and Development Framework plans for community-owned land – (as part of Subcomponent 1.1); (ii) spatial planning and GIS aspects of the Biodiversity Economy Node Master Plans; (iii) best means for integration of biodiversity economy node objectives into the spatial and land-use planning elements of IDPs, SDFs, LED plans, and the District-Based Service Delivery Model; and (iv) accessing national spatial data on critical biodiversity areas and ecological support areas through the Biodiversity-GIS system (B-GIS) and various fine-scale systematic conservation planning processes coordinated by SANBI. Having high-level technical advice, provided through regular visits by the advisor to the nodes, will help the node teams to ensure that the biodiversity economy vision is infused into
local government thinking and planning, and also that existing spatial and management plans, as well as maps of critical biodiversity areas and ecological support areas, are used to inform the node platforms. Coordination with the relevant provincial and local government departments will also be facilitated, especially ECPTA, LEDET and EKZNW.

1.3.4 Component 3. Project Management

This component will support project management support activities to ensure cost-efficient, timely, and quality delivery of project activities and results, including monitoring and evaluation (M&E) and project reporting. This will include workshops, and operational costs to support the project’s day-to-day implementation and management, including procurement, financial management (FM), environmental and social safeguards, and preparation of annual work plans and organization of audit reports. The component further includes the design and implementation of a communication strategy to report on the project results and to advocate nationally for the biodiversity economy and its positive benefits for wildlife conservation and socio-economic development. It also supports the monitoring and evaluation (M&E) system to report on the project’s expected results (disaggregating by gender, where appropriate) and systematizes the project’s lessons learned. These Component 3 activities will be carried out by a Project Management Unit based at DEFF in Pretoria, liaising closely with node coordinators (funded through Component 1), who will be based at SANParks Eastern Cape Regional Office in Port Elizabeth, SANParks Office in Skukuza, and iSimangaliso Wetland Park office in St Lucia.

1.4 Project Institutional and Implementation Arrangements

Implementation of the project activities will be led by the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) as the project Executing Agency for the Government of South Africa. DEFF is mandated to provide leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community. Implementation of the project will be overseen by a joint Project Oversight Committee (POC). The joint (POC) will be chaired by DEFF, and will include representation from relevant government agencies and civil society organizations involved in implementing and/or co-financing the project.

The project will be managed through a Project Management Unit housed in DEFF. While implementation of the activities in the three biodiversity economy nodes, will be through the three Sub-Executing Agencies – South African National Parks (SANParks), South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) and iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, responsible for delivering on the desired intermediate results. Delivery on the subcomponent objectives will be coordinated by the three project node coordinators hosted by the sub-executing agencies, SANParks and iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority.

Two full-time Safeguards Officers (Environmental and Social) in the PMU will support the Project Node Coordinators to implement the project safeguards and minimize risks.

As one of the sub-executing agencies, SANBI will also oversee work in the Eastern Cape project node on community stewardship and livelihoods, to be undertaken by the provincial
conservation authority, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Authority (ECPTA). In the Greater Addo-Amathole Node in the Eastern Cape Province, project activities will thus be carried out both by the Addo Elephant National Park (through SANParks Head Office) and by ECPTA (through SANBI), with the work connected through landscape level coordination and investment planning across the entire node. The Project Node Coordinator will be contracted by SANParks, and will be based at the Port Elizabeth office of SANParks, but will service the entire node, including areas where ECPTA is working with local communities around the Great Fish River Nature Reserve, and conducting stewardship outreach in the surrounding landscape.

In the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node, activities will be carried out by the Kruger National Park (through SANParks Head Office) in the project node, guided by the wider Greater Kruger Strategic Development Framework, and in partnership with a wide range of government agencies, civil society and private sector partners, including traditional authorities and the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET) department of provincial government. The Project Node Coordinator will be contracted by SANParks and based at the Skukuza office of SANParks. In the Greater iSimangaliso Node, activities will be carried out by the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority in the buffer of the park and the node area in the northern half of the Park, in partnership with a wide range of stakeholders, including traditional authorities, local government, private tourism operators and the provincial conservation authority, Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife (EKZNW).

The Results Framework (RF) will guide day-to-day M&E and also evaluation analysis and reporting at midterm and completion. DEFF as the Executing Agency, through the Project Management Unit, has the overall responsibility for coordinating M&E and ensuring that data and information are produced on time and to the necessary quality. This includes timeous liaison and follow up with the three Sub-Executing Agencies who will need to submit information and data to the PMU every 6 months. This submission process will be facilitated by the three Project Node Coordinators, whose terms of reference will include producing regular landscape-level activity reports that will inform project-level M&E, in conjunction with their hosting agencies (SANParks and iSimangaliso).

1.5 **Project Beneficiaries and Stakeholders**

The project will have positive social and environmental benefits at local, national, regional and global levels. At the local level, direct project beneficiaries include communities and their members in targeted landscapes, and particularly: individual entrepreneurs, small, medium and micro-sized enterprises (SMMEs), community-based organizations (CBOs), such as co-operatives, communal property associations (CPAs), and community trusts. Benefits are expected to include improved access to skills training for business development, finance and markets, improved local governance, and subsequently more profitable community or individually-owned businesses and increased household income. Community-level governance structures will benefit through strengthening of capacity for negotiation of land tenure security and co-management of natural resources.
Women bear the heavy burden of ensuring the livelihood sustainability of rural households. Moreover, restrictions on their participation in public consultations and decision-making spaces, customary laws, and low level of literacy all play against women’s empowerment within the community. As such, the project envisages empowering women by (a) ensuring their active participation in project consultation and decision mechanisms at the community level; (b) increasing their integration into and access to value chains; (c) promoting greater participation of women in credit and savings schemes and literacy training and all forms of capacity building; and (d) providing access to training opportunities and benefits to increase their capacity on leadership conservation schemes. The project will also define measures to ensure that women and other vulnerable groups, especially youth, are adequately represented and participate in both project activities and decision-making processes.

Private sector businesses that enter into partnerships with landholding communities to develop tourism infrastructure will benefit from new investment opportunities. This includes impact investors who enter into carefully drafted partnership agreements with communities and help develop their capacity to operate tourism facilities, who will see a social as well as an environmental return on their investment. Private sector businesses such as existing lodges and private reserves surrounding the national parks who conclude supply agreements with entrepreneurs in local communities supported through the project will benefit from increased sustainability in their supply chains. New small and micro businesses supported through the project will help to build an entrepreneurial culture in rural areas where this has been lacking, facilitating access to information on opportunities for financial and technical support beyond the project itself, and leveraging further investments over time.

At the national level, the overall economy is expected to benefit from the increase in technical skills, new business opportunities, and enhanced resilience to climate change in rural areas, and further inclusion of historically disadvantaged segments of the population. The project will also benefit the regional and global community through the protection of globally significant biodiversity and natural habitats. With unemployment at nearly 30% nationally and significantly higher in rural area surrounding national parks, project interventions that lead to the creation of sustainable jobs and supply chain agreements with small businesses will provide a significant boost to the local economy. By demonstrating the potential of the biodiversity economy, the project will also garner public support for wildlife and biodiversity conservation as an engine for economic growth. Most critically, the project will help to make the case in South Africa for wildlife as a national asset, requiring the full cooperation of all sectors of society to preserve this precious resource, and to combat the scourge of poaching.
2 METHODOLOGY AND CONSULTATION

This chapter describes the methodology and approach used in preparing the Environmental and Social Management Framework (ESMF) for this project.

2.1 Literature Review

Review of the existing baseline information and literature material was undertaken and helped in gaining a further and deeper understanding of the proposed project. A desk review of the Republic of South Africa’s legal framework and policies was also conducted. Among the documents that were reviewed in order to familiarise and further understand the project included:

World Bank Related Documents
- Project Concept Note
- Project Appraisal Document (PAD)
- Process Framework (PF)
- Project Information Document
- World Bank Environmental and Social Standards
- Concept Environmental and Social Review Summary
- Stakeholder Engagement Plan

Republic of South Africa Policy and Legislative Documents

Other Relevant Literature
- Baseline socio-economic literature documents of the project areas
- Baseline bio-physical literature of the project areas

2.2 Preparation of ESMF

Preparation of the ESMF included the following stages:
- Identification of positive and negative environmental and social impacts of sub projects investments;
- Identification of environmental and social mitigation measures;
- Preparation of screening procedures for sub project proposals;
- Identification of implementation arrangements and financial requirements
- Public consultations and discussions with relevant stakeholders

2.3 Public Consultations and Discussions with Key Stakeholders

Stakeholder engagement is one of the central concepts of the Project. There has been a number of meetings and consultations between DEFF and the World Bank, and DEFF and key stakeholder institutions and communities to discuss project design and locations of key infrastructures. The level of stakeholder risk for the Project is considered substantial given the level of in-depth engagement that will be required to ensure benefit sharing arrangements with communities are fair and social conflicts and tensions are minimized. Stakeholder engagement remains critical to the project’s success. High expectations as to what the Protected Areas can deliver may lead to frustration with project results, including
from actors involved in land claims, a sensitive political issue. Simultaneously, local stakeholders in many instances demonstrate negative perceptions about protected areas. The Project intends to help conserve natural habitats and wildlife of global value, while allowing the realization of the economic potential for social development of these natural assets.

In the current scenario, public consultation and disclosure would need to be consistent with the requirements for stakeholder engagement and taking into account COVID-19 related quarantine and lockdown measures. The World Bank’s guidance Technical Note on Public Consultations and Stakeholder Engagement in WB-supported operations will be followed when there are constraints on conducting public meetings.
3 BASELINE DATA

This section describes the overall baseline condition of the proposed project areas in terms of bio-physical and socio-economic environment. The baseline data of the 3 provinces has been considered as a result of the fact that the exact locations of the sub projects in each of the 3 provinces is currently not known. The project implementation areas are in PAs located in KwaZulu Natal, Eastern Cape and Limpopo provinces.

3.1 KwaZulu Natal Province

3.1.1 Location and Size

KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) is the third smallest province in South Africa with an area of 94,361 square kilometres, making up 7.7% of the country’s land area. It is situated on the east coast of South Africa along the Indian Ocean, bordering Mpumalanga, e-Swatini, and Mozambique in the north, and Free State, Lesotho and the Eastern Cape in the south and west. KZN is divided into one metropolitan municipality (eThekwini Metropolitan Municipality) and 10 district municipalities, which are further subdivided into 43 local municipalities. It is home to the Country’s two busiest ports: namely Richard’s Bay and Durban. KZN plays a significant role in the country’s economy and is considered as the second largest contributing province.
3.1.2 **Climate**

KZN’s climate varies from subtropical to temperate. Precipitation decreases from more than 50 inches (1,270 mm) annually along the coast to 30 to 40 inches (760 to 1,020 mm) inland. Temperatures decrease from the frost-free coastal area but still remain warm. In general, summers are hot with occasional rain, while the warm, dry, and sunny winters have made the coast the principal holiday playground of Southern Africa. The higher elevations of the Drakensberg experience freezing temperatures and snow in the winter.

3.1.3 **Topography**

KZN is generally hilly or mountainous, especially along its western border. The land rises from the coast to more than 11,000 feet along the Drakensberg Escarpment on that border. The slope is not gradual, however, and various rocky outcrops render the terrain into steps of undulating land ascending from an elevation of 500 feet along the coastal plain to areas of 2,000 feet and then 4,000 feet in the centre of the province, a region known as the Midlands. Beyond the Drakensberg lies the Highveld, or high plateau.

3.1.4 **Hydrology**

KZN is situated within the Pongola-Umzimkulu and Mzimvubu-Tsitsikamma Hydrological Zones, two of six hydrological zones in South Africa. It has the highest rainfall out of all the provinces. The province has 75 perennial rivers with the largest 19 accounting for 25% of South Africa’s mean annual runoff.

3.1.5 **Forests**

The forestry industry in KZN covers about 740,000 hectares (8.2% of the total area of the province) with 560,000 hectares already planted and a further 190,000 hectares of land owned by forestry organisations unplanted. The timber growing areas are divided into 5 main afforestation regions which are identified as Northern Natal, Midlands, Southern Natal, Zululand, and Maputaland. The main species planted are pine (52,2%) eucalyptus (38,92%) and wattle (8,3%). All of these are grown in KZN. The dominant form of timber produced is roundwood that is used for chipping for export. Mainly hardwood species are used for this purpose. The regions with the largest hardwood areas are the provinces of KwaZulu-Natal (Midlands) and Mpumalanga South where 49.2% of all hardwoods occur. The dominant species is eucalyptus grandis which accounts for 51.8% of the total hardwood area.

3.1.6 **Freshwaters and wetlands**

The *iSimangaliso Wetland Park was listed as South Africa’s first World Heritage Site in December 1999*. *iSimangaliso* contains four Ramsar sites (St. Lucia Lake System; Turtle Beaches/Coral Reefs of Tongaland; Kosi Bay Lake System; and Lake Sibaya) that recognise the ecological functions of wetlands as well as their importance as resources of economic, cultural, scientific and recreational value. *iSimangaliso* also has a formal buffer zone around it within which potentially damaging industrial developments such as mining, prospecting and fracking are prevented.

The *iSimangaliso* Wetland Park’s marine protected area has (MPA) expanded significantly, with the result that the World Heritage Site is now 1,328,901ha in extent (marine and terrestrial combined). The Park is now South Africa’s second largest protected
area after the Kruger National Park. The iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority is the government entity responsible for the conservation, protection and presentation of the site.

Five interlinked ecosystems provide habitat for the most diverse fauna of the region (6,500 plant and animal species), many occurring with viable population sizes within the park. Species of conservation importance include 11 endemic to the park, 108 endemic to South Africa, and 467 species are listed as threatened in South Africa. The site is of sufficient size and retains most of the key elements that are essential for long-term functioning of the ecosystems. The property consists of 13 separate but contiguous conservation units including ~ 85,000 ha of marine reserves. This wetland is characterized by one or more special habitat or biodiversity attributes that make the site important for local conservation efforts. These include supporting important populations of species of conservation concern; supporting large populations of wetland-dependent species; providing important migration, breeding or feeding sites; and characterized by unusually high natural habitat diversity.

Apart from being one of Africa's outstanding coastal wetlands, it also includes a wide variety of landforms. These include coral reefs, long sandy beaches, coastal dunes, lake systems, swamps and extensive reed and papyrus wetlands. The Park's environmental heterogeneity, floods, coastal storms and a geographic location between subtropical and tropical Africa have resulted in exceptional species diversity and on-going speciation. The Park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa’s largest estuarine system, 530 bird species and 25,000-year-old coastal dunes. The site has exceptional aesthetic qualities to many of its habitats and locations including the shifting salinity states within Lake St. Lucia; large numbers of nesting turtles, resident dolphins and migrating whales and whale sharks; and abundance of waterfowl and breeding colonies of pelicans, storks, herons and terns.

Threats to integrity include (i) the plantation of alien invasive species causing the soil to become more alkaline, which further promotes encroachment in sensitive ecosystems (ii) uncontrolled harvesting of Ncema, a salt marsh rush, used in the construction of huts; (iii) regional development (upstream water abstraction, agricultural practices and road construction); (iv) land claims; resource harvesting and local community issues. A unified management system for all 13 components has been proposed to address these issues. As part of its broader Community Based Natural Resource Management program, the Wetlands Authority has regulated the annual harvest and cutting practices, to balance communities’ current needs with the longer-term sustainability of the Ncema resource.

3.5.7 Wildlife
KZN is rich in biodiversity and hosts the Maputoland-Pondoland-Albany hotspot, one of the 34 most biodiverse areas in the world. Three different biomes currently exist in the province, namely the Indian Ocean Coastal Belt, Grasslands, and Savanna Biome. The many and diverse ecosystems contained in iSimangaliso Wetland Park provide important habitats for a large number of species, including those that are rare, threatened and/or endemic. The species lists for the Park are the lengthiest in the region and population sizes for most of them are viable. Of the over 6,500 plant and animal species known to occur in
the Park, populations of species of conservation importance include 11 species that are endemic to the Park, 56 species endemic to KwaZulu-Natal, and 108 species endemic to South Africa, while 467 are listed as threatened in South Africa. While studies on a number of these species are ongoing, in the past little was known about the status and viability of populations of the majority of rare, threatened and endemic species in the Park, particularly the lower vertebrate and invertebrate species.

### 3.1.7 Population and Size

According to the population statistics of South Africa, the population of KZN in 2018 had increased to 11,384,722 from 10,819,130 as tabulated in 2011. In absolute terms, the growth rate in the population of KZN between 2011 and 2018 was 5.8 percent. The population of KZN Province is distributed into four racial groups namely Africans (87.6%), Indians (7%), Whites (4.1%) and Coloureds (1.4%). An estimated 31.5 percent of the population in the province are children below 14 years of age whereas 36.6 are the youth between ages 15 to 34 who are economically active. These estimates imply that there is a high dependency ratio of 58.7 percent thereby burdening the working population as it bears the greater responsibility of paying for public services.

### 3.1.8 Economic Growth & Setting

Economic growth in KZN has deteriorated considerably since 2011, where it recorded a broad-based average growth rate of 3.7 per cent. In 2017, the provincial economy grew moderately by a seasonally adjusted 1.4 per cent, rising from a disappointing 0.7 per cent in reordered in 2016. The moderate improvement in KZN’s economic activity in 2017 was supported by the favourable weather conditions, which resulted in higher agricultural production and thus a significant contribution to real GDP. Despite this moderate rise, economic growth remains unacceptably below 5 per cent which is envisioned in the Provincial Growth and Development Plan (PGDP) that was revised in 2018. The total GDP generated in 2017 amounted to approximately R498.490 billion, which translates to 16 per cent of the national output, thereby making KZN the second largest economy after Gauteng at 35.2 per cent and followed by the Western Cape at 13.8 per cent. EThekwini metro contributes the most substantial proportion of R-GDP at 61 per cent, which is attributable to different economic activities such as tourism, harbour ports, and sugar refinery industry, among others. UMgungundlovu and King Cetshwayo follow at 10.5 per cent and 6.9 per cent, respectively. The least contributing districts are Umzinyathi, Harry Gwala and Umkhanyakude at the estimated rate of 1.5 per cent, 1.7 per cent and 2.5 per cent, respectively.

### 3.1.9 Human Settlement

KZN is a relatively rural province, with about 47.5% of the total population residing in rural areas. However, the highest population densities in the province can be found within towns and cities. With a population density of 1,000 per square kilometre, the city of Durban accounts for the highest population density in the province. Rural areas in KZN are characterised by significant levels of poverty where considerable proportion of individuals live below the basic living standard.
3.1.10 Unemployment
The total number of people unemployed increased markedly by 16.2 per cent from 786 000 in the third to 913 000 in the fourth quarter of 2018. This translates to an increase in official unemployment rate from 23 per cent to 25.6 per cent. Compared to the same period in 2017, the official unemployment rate accelerated by 14.6 per cent from 797 000 in the fourth quarter of 2017 to 913 000 in the fourth quarter of 2018. Unemployment rate in the province is higher among females and in 2017, unemployment among females was estimated at 24.1% as against 23.3% among males.

3.1.11 Poverty
South Africa is an upper-middle-income country; however, the majority of the country’s households remain in the trap of poverty. In 2012, Statistics South Africa published criteria for measuring poverty: the food poverty line (FPL), the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL), and the upper-bound poverty line (UBPL). In 2017 approximately 36 percent of the population of KZN were living below the FPL level and unable to purchase food that is efficient for the necessary balanced diet, ranking as the second-highest province in the country. An estimate of 51.7 percent of the KZN population has to sacrifice some food to get other non-food items such as airtime and transport hence living within the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL), the province having the third-highest rate in the country. In 2017, the rate of people living below the upper-bound poverty line (UBPL) was estimated at 66.1 percent as tabulated from those that can be able to consume both food and non-food items but are unable to meet other basic needs such as shelter and education. This was the third-highest rate in the country.

3.1.12 Education
According to the Statistics of South Africa, over 10 years from 2007 to 2017, the level of education in KZN province has improved. In the recent statistics of 2017, only 7 percent of the population aged 20 years and above had not received basic schooling, an improvement from 11.5 percent recorded in 2007. The percentage of the population aged 20 years and above that completed secondary education increased from 21.6 percent in 2007 to 27.5 percent in 2017 thereby positively contributing to the Economically Active Population.

3.1.13 Health
South Africa, as is the case with many other African countries, did not achieve the set targets for the Millennium Development Goals. The reasons are multifaceted but relate fundamentally to poorly functioning health systems in sub-Saharan Africa, and the more recent epidemics of HIV/AIDS, and tuberculosis (TB) in southern Africa. In 2010, South Africa was the country with the fifth highest rate of TB infection in the world. In 2016, the TB death rate in KZN had remained unchanged from that of 2015 at about 5.4 per cent – one of the lowest rates in the country, second only to the Western Cape at 3.8 per cent.

3.1.14 Electricity, Water and Sanitation
KZN was trailing behind most other provinces in the country in respect of connecting households with electricity in 2016. Even so, 88.3 per cent of its households now have access to electricity. The province also had one of the lowest proportions of households
with access to piped water and hygienic toilets in the country, at 75.0 per cent and 79.1 per cent, respectively.

3.2 **Eastern Cape Province**

The Eastern Cape is located on the east coast of South Africa between the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal provinces. Inland, it borders the Northern Cape and Free State provinces, as well as Lesotho. It is approximately 170 thousand km² and is inhabited by about 6.7 million people. This equals about 13.8% of both the total population and the total land area of South Africa. The majority speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans, then English and seSotho. Bhisho is the capital of the East Cape Province and hosts the governing bodies. Port Elizabeth in Algoa Bay is the largest city and biggest industrial hub in the Eastern Cape Province. The Eastern Cape is divided into 6 District Municipalities and two Metropolitan Areas (Nelson Mandela Bay – Port Elizabeth, and Buffalo City - East London). It is further divided into 37 Local Municipalities. The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the semi-arid Great Karoo to the forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley, the fertile Langkloof, and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region. The Eastern Cape’s main feature is its spectacular coastline bordering the Indian Ocean.

3.2.1 **Climate**

The Eastern Cape has nine climatic regions ranging from areas with late summer rainfall and frosty winters, to areas that experience rainfall throughout the year. Generally, it is one of the coldest regions in South Africa with an average daily high temperature of only 24 degrees centigrade. The average temperature over 7 months is over 25 degrees Celsius. The northern areas generally have a high altitude and little water, which result in semi-arid conditions that characterize regions such as the Karoo. To the south, the climate is quite different since a number of rivers trickle down from the mountains and provide an ample supply of water. The coast experiences more wind and higher levels of humidity. Conditions inland are usually drier and hotter and there is a lower rainfall level than at the coast. In summer, temperatures range from 16º to 26º C while winter temperatures range from 7º to 20º C. Winter months fall between April and August while summer temperatures are usually highest between November and April.

3.2.2 **Topography**

Eastern Cape is predominantly mountainous country. It includes the southern spur of the Drakensberg, rising to more than 9,000 feet (2,700 m) in the northeast, and descends southward from the great interior plateau (Highveld) of southern Africa to form a relatively narrow coastal plain along the Indian Ocean. Southwest of the Highveld and the Great Fish River, the topography is characterized by east-west-trending mountain ranges and valleys. East of the Great Fish River, including the lower valley of the Great Kei River, perennial streams have carved deep valleys on their way to the ocean.

3.2.3 **Hydrology**

The Eastern Cape includes three of South Africa’s Hydrological Zones. The Mzimvubu-Tsitsikamma, Breede-Gouritz-Berg and a small portion of the Kraai sub-catchment of the Upper Orange Hydrological Zones also lies within the provincial boundary. The Acting Director-General of the Department of Water and Sanitation has declared a water
shortage (i.e. a drought) in the Mzimvubu- Tsitsikamma Water Management Area in the Eastern Cape Province 2018.

### 3.2.4 Soils and Geology

The Geology of the Eastern Cape is dominated by younger sedimentary rocks, predominantly clay or sand based. Due to the young geology, there are few valuable mineral or precious metal deposits, however there are a number of deposits of industrial minerals such as high-quality clay and travertine (limestone) in the Port St Johns area, kaolin deposits near Grahamstown and titanium from the Pondoland area. Coal seams found in the Eastern Cape are predominantly narrow and of poor grade, although some mining occurs. The soils of the Eastern Cape show similarities to other sub-tropical soils with a high percentage of mica, quartz and kaolinite. Where they are farmed without suitable management, they typically show low levels of nutrients. The soils of the Eastern Cape are typically shallow, unstable and less developed, apart from those few areas that receive more reliable and efficient rainfall. With predominantly sandy soils and dry conditions, soil erosion is a major problem in the Eastern Cape when poor pasture management occurs.

### 3.2.5 Forests

South Africa’s plantations represent about 1% of the world’s forestry plantations of 109.5 million ha. The plantations of the Eastern Cape, which total 129 334 ha in extent, represent 10% of South Africa’s total forestry plantations. 51% of the province’s plantations are privately owned, while 46% are state-owned. 103 807 ha (81%) are Pine plantations. Additionally, the National Forest Inventory (NFI) identified 226 997 ha of natural forest in the Eastern Cape out of which 139,944 ha are named and are assumed to be legally demarcated forests. 87,053 ha of forest, while shown on the NFI maps, are not identified by any names and are assumed to not be legally demarcated. The most significant commercial activities in the forestry sector arise from the processing of timber from the province’s commercial forestry plantations. It is estimated that around 770,500 m³ of timber is processed in the Eastern Cape each year, producing 328,700 m³ of sawn board which is mainly used in the construction sector.

### 3.5.7 Flora and Fauna

The Eastern Cape Province is internationally recognized for its scenic beauty and its diverse biodiversity. Among the nine provinces, it has the highest biome diversity with at least seven biomes: Savanna, Grassland Succulent Karoo, Nama Karoo, Forest, Fynbos and Thicket. The terrestrial vegetation is diverse and much of it is endemic to the vicinity and the uniqueness of the province.

There are a number of floral habitats meeting in the Eastern Cape, producing a range of different plants and environments. In the north and west, the aromatic, succulent-rich Karoo environment contrasts with the intermingled north eastern sub-tropical forests and more temperate woods of the south along the coast. Ancient forest remnants are found at Keiskammahoek, Dwesa, Port St Johns and Bathurst, and mangroves grow on the Wild Coast. Inland in the more eastern areas are extensive grasslands and in the western central plateau is savannah bushveld. Many of these are fragile environments and host a wide
variety of wildlife. Eastern Cape is home to many popular game reserves including the following:

**Addo National Park**
The present park represents five of South Africa’s seven biomes, namely the Nama Karoo, Fynbos, Forest, Thicket, Grassland and the azonal Wetland (only lacking the Succulent Karoo and Savanna) (Appendix 6, Map 8). This makes it the most diverse park in South Africa and Africa. A total of 43 vegetation units have been identified, some of these being Afro-montane Forest, Coastal Forest, Eastern Mixed Nama Karoo, Central Lower Nama Karoo, Mountain Fynbos, Grassy Fynbos, Valley Thicket, Mesic Succulent Thicket, Spekboom Succulent Thicket, Xeric Succulent Thicket and Coastal Grasslands (Vlok et al. 2003). Expansion plans for the park will increase this number of nationally recognised vegetation types to 13, more than any other conservation area in the country.

Landscapes vary from the short succulent Noorsveld type (characterised by the short sweet noorsdoring, *Euphorbia coerulescens*), karroid vegetation of the Central Lower Nama Karoo vegetation type, and Spekboom Succulent Thicket on the warm northern slopes near Darlington Dam. None of the Noorsveld was conserved prior to its incorporation into the park. The Zuurberg Mountains consist predominantly of Mountain and Grassy Fynbos on the higher lying leached nutrient-poor sandstone-derived soils. The southern side of the mountain range has relatively nutrient-rich alluvium- and aeoliante-type soils with its characteristic Xeric and Mesic Succulent Thicket. Along the moist coast, unique mixes of Afro-montane and coastal forests interspersed with coastal grasslands occur.

The variation in altitude, topography, climate, geology and soil composition over a relatively short range within the park accounts for the diverse floristic change. The vegetation varies from typical thicket species such as spekboom *Portulcaria afra*, white milkwood *Sideroxylon inerme*, and cape plumbago *Plumbago auriculata*, to forest species such as broad leaved yellowwood *Podocarpus latifolius*, through to typical Fynbos species on the mountainous areas to the characteristic *Pentzia* spp shrub land and Noorsveld *Euphorbia* spp. communities in the Karoo section.

The park was initially proclaimed in 1931 to preserve the threatened African elephant *Loxodonta africana*, population in the Eastern Cape (Pringle 1982). Reduced to 11 animals, the population has increased to over 620 by 2014 (Internal AENP reports), the second largest population in South Africa. Although the park is at the junction of five biomes, the 20 large mammalian herbivore species diversity is still less than other national parks. The park also harbours Cape buffalo *Syncerus caffer*, population, whose offspring, because of their disease-free status are in great demand.

The rich browsing value of the Thicket vegetation accounts for the high proportion of large browsing and intermediate mammalian herbivores (of which there are ten species), such as elephant, black rhinoceros *Diceros bicornis bicornis*, kudu *Tragelaphus strepsiceros*, eland *Tragelaphus oryx*, and bushbuck *Tragelaphus scriptus*. The bulk of the grazing species is made up of Cape buffalo and plains zebra (*Equus quagga*).

The introduction of lion *Panthera leo*, into the main elephant section (and Kuzuko contractual section in 2007) was intended to complete the Big 5 eco-tourism product, in
addition to their importance as agents of predation. Spotted hyena *Crocuta crocuta*, have also been introduced as part of re-establishing the carnivore process in the park in 2004, with cheetah *Acinonyx jubatus*, introduced in 2007 into the Kuzuko contractual section. Species such as cheetah are planned for introduction into the Darlington area once the area and game populations are secured. Certain species such as oribi *Ourebia ourebi* and serval *Felis serval*, would require a meta-population management strategy prior to reintroduction.

The park has a wide range of suitable protected habitats for terrestrial birds, including some red data species such as the ground hornbill *Bucorvus leadbeateri*, Cape vulture *Gyps coprotheres*, martial eagle *Polemaetus bellicosus*, Stanley’s bustard *Neotis denhami*, kori bustard *Ardeotis kori*, grass owl *Tyto capensis* and cuckoo hawk *Aviceda cuculoides*. The park is important for the conservation of the region’s herpetofauna – it conserves 13 endemic species, two of which are restricted to the Eastern Cape region, namely the Tasman’s girdled lizard *Cordylus tasmani* and the Cape legless burrowing skink *Scelotes anguina*. The park is also home to populations of five species of land tortoises, and 14 of the expected 15 species of frogs being red data listed species (Branch 1988). Known important invertebrates in the park include the endemic dune grasshopper *Urnisiella rubropunctata* in the Alexandria dune fields, and the endemic flightless dung beetle *Circellium bacchus* which is specially adapted to exploit the faeces of large herbivores in the dense thicket biome.

The marine section of the park, situated in Algoa Bay, falls within the warm temperate biogeographic marine province, and consist of the Bird and St Croix island groups and surrounding waters. The Bird Island marine protected area (MPA) contributes towards the 9% of the South African coastline which is considered a no-take or completely protected area. Dominant marine fauna can be grouped into marine mammals (seals, whales, dolphins), birds (penguins, gannets, terns *etc.*), fish (migratory and reef species) and highly diverse benthic fauna on the reefs. The two island groups within the Bay are important as breeding grounds for birds and seals. A number of birds of conservation significance occur on the islands: the endangered African penguin *Spheniscus demersus*, comprising more than 50% of the world population, the Cape gannet *Morus capensis*, comprising 40% of the world population, the endangered roseate tern *Sterna dougallii*, and the endemic African black oystercatcher *Haematopus moquini*.

**The Great Fish River Nature Reserve (GFRNR)** complex is 45,500 ha and straddles the Great Fish River in the south-east of the Eastern Cape Province, and is located north-west of the N2, midway between Grahamstown and King William’s Town. The Great Fish River bisects the GFRNR which comprises representative steep river valleys and inter-basin ridges of the Great Fish River catchment area, dense, semi-succulent, thorny scrub or thicket and notable variations in topography and elevation ranging from 95 to 559 m amsl. The geology, topography and climatic variations have resulted in high levels of plant diversity and a high incidence of plant endemism. Subtropical Fish River Thicket is the dominant vegetation type, interspersed with areas of savanna and grassland. Generally, the vegetation at the higher elevations has greater grass content whereas in the low-lying areas the vegetation is short and thorny or succulent thicket. Annual rainfall has an effect on the amount of grass growth available to herbivores. The vegetation has three main
physiognomic components, a woody tree and tall shrub component, a dwarf shrub component and a grass component. Of the broad habitat types represented in the GFRNR, namely Albany Thicket, Fish Arid Thicket, Fish Valley Thicket, Dune Thicket with Grassland, Valley Thicket, Valley Thicket with Succulent Karroo and Grassland, the thicket and thicket mosaic types are most prominent vegetation types.

Historically, when the large mammal complement was being initially restored after the change in land use, a number of extra-limital species were introduced into the Double Drift Nature Reserve. The understanding of ecological functioning is that extra-limital species are undesirable and an effort has been made to remove these through game auctions or culling. They include blue wildebeest, nyala, waterbuck and white rhino. Warthog from Zululand were introduced on the understanding that they were the same as the species which was extirpated from the Eastern Cape in the mid-1800s. This has subsequently however been demonstrated to be incorrect and they are now considered to be an alien invasive species.

Restoration of indigenous large mammals has however progressed well and the GFRNR currently has a large and diverse population of indigenous mammal species, particularly large and medium-sized herbivores. The large predator component remains to be re-established although though there are signs of leopard in the area. In total 73 mammal species, including hippopotamus, aardvark, honey badger, black-backed jackal, caracal and cape clawless otter have been noted on GFRNR and red hartebeest, steenbuck, grysbok, kudu and eland have been re-introduced including a healthy population of over 200 disease free buffalo. There is limited documentation on the birdlife in the GFRNR although approximately 240 species, including Cape vulture, Verreaux’s eagle, martial eagle, kori bustard, Stanley’s bustard, ground hornbill, giant eagle owl and blue crane, have been noted. There is currently no database regarding diversity of reptiles, amphibians, fish and invertebrate’s species and no systematic effort has been made to identify endemics, threatened or endangered species. GFRNR boasts an important population of black rhino (*Diceros bicornis minor)*.

**The proposed Addo-Amathole Node** is located in the Eastern Cape and stretches from the Addo Elephant National Park in the west, to the Great Fish River Nature Reserve in the east. Addo Elephant National Park is situated approximately 75 km north of Port Elizabeth, and stretches from the semiarid plains around Darlington Dam, south and east over the Zuurberg Mountain range and into the Sundays River Valley. From here the park extends south to the Sundays River mouth and then east along the Bushmans River Mouth. The Greater Fish River lies in the valley of the Great Fish River, located between the towns of Grahamstown and Fort Beaufort, extending eastwards all the way to the Kieskama River. The Reserve is located north-west of the N2, midway between Grahamstown and King William’s Town. The Addo-Amathole Node straddles two district municipalities namely the Sarah Baartman and Amathole District Municipalities.

Addo Elephant National Park is surrounded by a mixture of private and government owned land. Eastern Cape has seen a significant growth in privately owned game farms and ecotourism establishments, which is viewed as more environmentally and economically
sustainable than livestock farming. The eastern part of the Greater Fish River Reserve is characterised by dense populations of people living on communal land, with high levels of unemployment, a strong sense of traditional leadership, and largely dependent on subsistence agriculture, natural resource use and social grants. By contrast the areas to the west are characterised by commercial agriculture and private game reserves, low population densities, private freehold land and low levels of unemployment.

**Mountain Zebra National Park** is another Popular Park in this province with its rolling plains and deep valleys. It is home to the Cape mountain zebra with a current population of 350. Also grazing the park are eland, red hartebeest, black wildebeest and gemsbok.

**Shamwari Game Reserve** is a private malaria-free reserve. Shamwari stretches along the Bushman's river, midway between Port Elizabeth and Grahamstown, forming a natural extension to the Garden Route. Covering 25 000 hectares.

**Pumba Game Reserve**: Spanning 6 000 hectares, the reserve hosts a variety of game including giraffe, zebra, hippo, cheetah, warthog, hyena and wild dog. The reserve also has smaller wildlife including the scrub hare, ant-bear, Cape fox and aardwolf, as well as a selection of antelope. Roaming white lions are also a major drawcard of Pumba.

### 3.3 Socio-Economic Background

#### 3.3.1 Population and Size

Between the 2011 Census and the 2016 Community Survey the total population of the Eastern Cape increased from 6.6 million to 7 million, or by 6.6%. This was slightly less than the South African (SA) population increase of 7.5%. The relatively slow growth of the Eastern Cape (EC) population is due to net out-migration rather than lower fertility rates or higher morbidity rates than the national average. StatsSA produces inter-provincial migration data based on stock data (the number of migrants at a point in time) and flow data (migration over a period of time). In terms of stock data there was almost no change between 2011 and 2016 with a net out-migration for EC in both years of 1.6 million. About 1.9 million people born in the EC live outside the EC, and about 300 000 people living in the EC were born outside the province.

The EC has a much higher rate of out-migration (whether stock or flow) than other provinces. In addition to out-migration from the province there is also intra-provincial migration with people choosing to live in the metros, in the non-metro towns (and their peripheries) and along transport corridors. Deep rural areas are de-populating. In July 2017 StatsSA published the mid-year population estimate for 2017 which shows the population of the province to be 6.5 million. This fall in the estimated population by half a million people (or 7%) is due to adjustments to StatsSA’s method of population estimation and would imply that the province had an almost zero population growth from 2011 to 2017.

The total fertility rate has been declining over the last few years in all provinces. The Eastern Cape has seen a marked decline in the total fertility rate: down from 3.55 (between 2001 and 2006) to an estimated 3.06 (between 2011 and 2016). The Western Cape has the lowest estimated fertility rate (2.21) and KwaZulu-Natal has the highest (3.08). Over the
2011 to 2016 period, the Eastern Cape’s population contracted by 52,930 people due to the net effects of migration. Despite the net loss of individuals, the province experienced immigration of 194,500 people, of which 30,840 were individuals from outside of South Africa. The population age structure of the Eastern Cape mirrors that of South Africa in that it has a large proportion of young people. In the province, minors (ages 0-14) account for approximately 34.8% of the provincial population. This is higher than the national average where minor children only account for 30.0% of the total population, and the second highest in the country after KZN (34.9%). In 2016, females over the age of 30 years old accounted for 56.8% of the total provincial population. The comparable national figure was 53.0%.

3.3.2 Economic Growth & Setting
The historic absence of significant mining activity in the Eastern Cape, and the creation of the former homelands as unproductive “labour reserves” are the main reasons that the provincial economy has tended to underperform compared to the national economy in terms of higher rates of poverty and unemployment. Generally, the province has a rather small and slow-growing private sector with low levels of fixed investment. The capital assets per capita that are about half the national average. The province also has a small agricultural sector with declining levels of employment; partial de-industrialisation, particularly of labour-intensive, non-automotive manufacturing; and very low levels of productive economic activity in the former homelands. In terms of economic structure, there are significant differences between the province and the country. The Eastern Cape has a very small primary sector (the smallest in South Africa both absolutely and as a percentage of provincial GDP), a medium-sized secondary sector and the largest tertiary services sector (as a percentage of GDP) in the country. Within the tertiary sector, the largest sub-sector is general government (including community services), which accounts for 20% of national GDP and contributes 34% of provincial gross geographic product. This underlines the province’s dependence on state spending (and social grants), and its high-risk exposure to future fiscal contractions. Local economies in the former homelands are particularly dependent on state spending and social grants. The impact at the national level of prolonged recession, low growth and low investment levels has been harsh. The Eastern Cape has been particularly badly affected.

Most economic activity in the province is in the two coastal metros. The relatively high population growth of several other coastal municipal areas also indicates the emergence of a predominantly coastal economy. There has been increasing unemployment, including in the economic hubs (unemployment in Nelson Mandela Metro increased from 26.4% to 28.8% between 2006 and 2016). There are 781 000 unemployed people in the Eastern Cape and there was a net loss of 64 570 jobs between 2006 and 2016. Employment growth has low since adoption of the Provincial Development Plan (PDP) in 2014 and youth unemployment now stands at 39.1% (official definition). Since the downturn, the Eastern Cape has lagged behind national trends in production, employment, education levels and population growth. This is reflected in the falling share of the Eastern Cape in the national economy on key measures.
3.3.3 **Education**
An estimated 28.0% of the Eastern Cape population over the age of 20 years old have either a matric qualification or some form of tertiary education in 2015. This is the lowest in the country and also notably less than the national average (39.0%). Positively, the Eastern Cape has the fourth lowest proportion of individuals with no schooling after the Western Cape (3.2%), Gauteng (4.2%) and the Free State (7.5%). The Eastern Cape Education Department experienced a decrease in overall learner enrolment of 105 501 learners (5.1%) between 2010 and 2014, with a decrease of 13 445 enrolments (0.7%) between 2012 and 2013 alone. In 2014, learner numbers increased marginally by approximately 8 800. Learner numbers are expected to decline marginally in 2015.

3.3.4 **Agriculture**
Merino sheep, Angora goats, and dairy cattle are raised throughout Eastern Cape. Wheat, corn (maize), and sorghum are grown inland with irrigation, while oranges, pineapples, tobacco, and potatoes are cultivated along the coast. Port Elizabeth and East London are manufacturing centres where the production of motors and the canning of fruit and vegetables are important.

3.3.5 **Poverty & Income Distribution**
The Eastern Cape and Limpopo have remained among the poorest provinces since 2001. However, the report shows a notable 17.5 percentage point drop in multidimensional poverty in the Eastern Cape since 2001. Eastern Cape remained the poorest province in 2016, with 12.7% of its households classified as multidimensionally poor. The report highlights that black African females, children (17 years and younger), people from rural areas, those living in the Eastern Cape and Limpopo, and those with no education are the main victims in the ongoing struggle against poverty. Eastern Cape had the highest percentage (95.4%) of older poor persons receiving an old-age grant when compared to the other provinces. Although the percentage is high, there is not too much of a difference between the older poor persons and the province's coverage for its overall older population Eastern Cape (42.8%) also has the highest percentage of poor households with children receiving child support grants compared to other provinces. In the Eastern Cape, the poverty headcount was 76.6% in 2006; 77.4% in 2009; 69.0% in 2011; and 72.9% in 2015.

The share of people in extreme, or food poverty, stood at 36.7% in 2018 and the upper bound poverty line at 69.1%. From 2011, however, there is a notable trend reversal, with poverty on the increase for all three poverty measures. Poverty shows a similar trend of decline followed by regression across poverty measures, including the South Africa Multiple Index of Deprivation. While households gained better access to services and facilities, their financial situation has deteriorated due to a combination of international and domestic factors such as stagnant economic growth, increasing unemployment and higher prices.

The province is facing a quadruple burden of disease, driven by HIV/AIDS and tuberculosis, non-communicable diseases, maternal and child mortality, injury and violence. Health status is also influenced by environmental conditions, incomes and living conditions. Food security remains low, with child stunting still persistent. The number of people with HIV/AIDS has increased from 314 000 in 1996 to 838 000 in 2018, due to
treatment availability and improved survival rates. AIDS-related deaths have decreased from 35 000 at its peak in 2003 to 15 000 in 2018. HIV+ estimates and estimated HIV death rates follow the national trends. Young women show the highest rates of prevalence and incidence.

3.3.6 Labour & Employment
Over half of the youth labour force (57.3%) are unemployed within the Eastern Cape and the official unemployment rate for the province in the third quarter of 2016 was 28.2%. Most districts within the Eastern Cape have a comparable youth unemployment rate, the lowest, however, is Sarah Baartman with 39.6% and the highest is Amathole with 62.9%, followed closely by O.R. Tambo with 63.4%. These are the only two districts over 60%, while Sarah Baartman is the only district below 50%. Statistics South Africa 3rd quarter 2014 indicates that 28% of women within the labour force are unemployed. Thus, the female unemployment rate is aligned with the general unemployment rate for the province. The districts with the largest female unemployment rates are O.R. Tambo (43.5%), Amathole (43.0%) and Alfred Nzo (42.8%). The lowest female unemployment rate was in Sarah Baartman at 30.1%.

The provincial labour force numbered just over 2.0 million in the third quarter of 2016, up by approximately 284 000 since the third quarter of 2011. Black Africans accounted for 82.7% of the labour force, followed by Coloured (11.5%) and Whites (5.7%). In the third quarter of 2016, the three largest formal sector industries in terms of employment in the Eastern Cape were community, social and personal services, which includes the government sector (28.6% of formal sector employment), wholesale and retail trade (23.3%) and manufacturing (10.7%). Together, these three industries account for 62.6% of all formal sector employment in the Eastern Cape in 2016.

3.3.7 Water
Access to water in adequate quality and quantity is a national challenge for South Africa as with the Eastern Cape Province. The highest access to piped water are households within the Nelson Mandela Bay (90.3%) and Sarah Baartman (85.8%), with Buffalo City third with 70.6%. Amathole leads the province with households that access water through community stands, followed by Chris Hani and O.R. Tambo. Nelson Mandela Bay, Chris Hani, Buffalo City and Sarah Baartman source almost all their water from either piped water or community stands. O.R. Tambo and Alfred Nzo source the majority of their water from natural sources, such as dams, rivers and streams. Growth in households’ access to piped water between 2012 and 2013 has been small, but positive.

3.3.8 Electricity
Access to electricity is highest in urban environments whilst access is lower in rural areas. Electricity access is available throughout all districts, with only two districts not having at least 70% of households connected to the grid. These are Joe Gqabi with 69.1%, and Alfred Nzo with only 46.0% of households.

3.3.9 Sanitation Services
Flush and Chemical toilets are the most widely used sanitation type in the province, with
the majority of households in Nelson Mandela Bay (89.3%), Buffalo City (71.3%), and Sarah Baartman (73.5%) having access to this sanitation type. Other districts have larger access to pit latrines over toilets; this includes Amathole (46.6%), O.R. Tambo (57.2%) and Alfred Nzo (67.0%). The Eastern Cape saw an increase in bucket latrines of 0.8% in 2012/2013, with the highest growth in Buffalo City at 1.1%, followed by Joe Gqabi at 0.9% and the lowest growth of 0.5% in Alfred Nzo and O.R. Tambo.

3.4 Limpopo Province
Limpopo Province is situated at the North Eastern corner of the Republic of South Africa, sharing international borders with Botswana to the west and northwest, Zimbabwe to the north and Mozambique to the east. Within South Africa the province shares borders with Gauteng Province to the south, North West Province to the southwest and Mpumalanga Province to the southeast. The province covers an area of 123 910 square kilometres making up 10.2% of the surface area of South Africa.

3.4.1 Climate
The province can be divided into three climatic regions: the Lowveld region: a semi-arid climate, the Middle- and Highveld: semi-arid, and Escarpment: a sub-humid climate. The province experiences summer rainfall. The northern part of the province has a hot, subtropical climate with 12 to 20 inches (300 to 500 mm) of precipitation annually. The southern mountains have a more temperate climate with about 30 inches (760 mm) of precipitation yearly. Winters are mild and generally frost free.

3.4.2 Topography
Limpopo province consists of the vast Lowveld plain, which is interrupted by several mountain ranges rising out of the Highveld plateau in the province’s south and centre. Among these ranges are the forested Soutpans Mountains, which extend about 80 miles (130 km) from east to west. The Water Mountains in the southwest rise to more than 6,500 feet (2,000 metres) and are densely covered with thorn trees and shrubs. The Lowveld extends across the eastern, northern, and western parts of the province and is a subtropical parkland with mopane (mopani) and baobab trees. The Limpopo River forms the province’s northern and western borders. The Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park, of which Kruger National Park is part, lies along the eastern border.

3.4.3 Hydrology
Limpopo depends mostly on surface water sources; however, a large number of rural households depend on groundwater for domestic use. 0.53% of the water in the province is used for irrigation, 8% for mining, 8% for energy, and less than 5% goes to service rural areas. Limpopo province is categorised as a water stressed province with almost all of its water resources being fully developed, and all available water being allocated. 43% of the dams have safety problems and the major dams are highly contaminated. Major rivers draining into Limpopo are Nuanetsi and Tuli in Zimbabwe, Shashe in Botswana, Oliphats, Luvuvhu and Crocodile in South Africa and Mokolo in Mozambique.

3.4.4 Soils and Geology
Soils in the area are very variable due to differences in parent material, climate and other soil forming factors. Soils are less developed; generally below 40cm in low rainfall areas
and mountainous/hilly areas. Conversely, areas of the basin that receive high rainfall and high temperature are characterized by deep (>100cm), leached clay and sandy soils. The parent material from where the soils are derived influences the texture and mineralogical soil properties. Where granites, gneisses and sandstones form the major parent material, soils are generally coarse textured and gravelly. Furthermore, solonetz (sodium-affected soils) cover a greater part of the south-eastern part of the Limpopo basin.

The Geology of the Limpopo River basin is characterised by a series of significant geological features: The Kalahari Craton; the Limpopo Belt; the Archaean Craton; the Karoo System; and the Bushveld Igneous Complex. The geology of the lower portion of the Limpopo River consists largely of consolidated and unconsolidated sedimentary rocks including argillites, fluvial sandstones and mudstones. These sediments form a region of shallow sloping plains interrupted occasionally by exposed granitic intrusions. The sediments of this region are largely alluvial in origin, including Ferrigenous arid sands. The coastal zone is lined with interior dunes, including some consolidated dunes, and coastal dunes.

3.4.5 Forests
About 63,000ha of the Limpopo’s landmass is under forest, and approximately 680 000 cubic metres of round wood is produced annually. Nearly 100,000 cubic metres of this wood is used by companies in the mining sector. Limpopo’s timber industry is concentrated in the eastern regions. Forests stretching northwards and eastwards of Tzaneen are a major source of pine and eucalyptus timber. The province, and especially the town of Tzaneen, has a large number of sawmills which form an important part of the regional economy, providing a base to drive other subsectors such as furniture making.

3.4.6 Freshwaters and wetlands
There are three Ramsar designated wetlands in the Limpopo River basin: Makuleke Wetlands, Nylsvley Nature Reserve and Verloren Valei Nature Reserve. Makuleke wetlands is within Limpopo province. It is about 7.758 ha and lies within the Kruger National Park, bordered by Zimbabwe and Mozambique to the north and east. Prominent features include riverine forests, riparian floodplain forests, floodplain grasslands, river channels and flood pans. The majority of the larger wetlands in the Limpopo River basin are located in Mozambique along the Lower Limpopo and Changane Rivers. This is driven mostly by climate, soil and hydrological conditions.

3.4.7 Flora and Fauna
The five regions of Limpopo Province offer very varied landscapes. Terrains encompass everything from natural bushveld, mountain ranges and savannah plains, to ancient forests, waterfalls and natural hot springs. Other than the Big 5, the province is home to countless mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians. Cheetahs, hyenas, baboons, warthogs, black eagles, hippos and crocodiles etc. The Nylsvley floodplain holds great importance for waterfowl in South Africa, while the Waterberg Mountains are home to a host of species, notably the White-backed Night Heron and African Finfoot. The majority of the Limpopo province forms part of the country's savanna biome with smaller pieces of land in the southern and central parts of the province accommodating grassland vegetation. The province is named after the Limpopo River, which flows along its northern border, it is a
region of contrasts, from Bushveld, to mountains, to primeval indigenous forests, wilderness and patchworks of farmland. In the eastern region lies the northern half of the Kruger National Park.

**Kruger National Park**
The Kruger National Park covers almost 2 million hectares or 20,000 km\(^2\) of South Africa land, bordering Mozambique in the east and Zimbabwe in the north. Its elongated shape is approximately 350 km from north to south and on average 60 km wide, with rivers providing natural boundaries in the south and north and the Lebombo hills bounding the east. To the west, the park is predominantly bordered by private and provincial nature reserves and many high-density communal areas.

Kruger’s climate is tropical to subtropical with high mean summer temperatures and mild, generally frost-free winters. Rainfall, delivered mostly through convective thunderstorms, is concentrated between October and April. A rainfall gradient stretches from an annual mean of about 750 mm in the south-west, to 350 mm in the north, although strong inter-annual and roughly decadal cyclic variations exist, with drought considered endemic. The extreme north of Kruger is unique due to its diverse assemblage of rock formations. Seven major perennial or seasonal rivers cross the park, and especially the western half of the parks terrestrial landscape is heavily dissected by drainage channels on undulating land. Current land use around Kruger is dominated by small-scale cropping, limited commercial farming and grazing in rural impoverished areas and communal conservation areas, while private conservation, game and cattle farming and high-value irrigated crop farming dominate other areas. The area north of the Olifants River in Mozambique comprises the relatively recently proclaimed Limpopo National Park while the area south of the Olifants is predominantly under hunting concessions.

There are close on 2000 plant species in the park including about 400 trees and shrubs, and 220 grasses. At a very coarse level, the vegetation can be considered as falling into one of three zones. A lower nutrient, higher rainfall well-wooded area occurs in the southwest and important trees are bush willows. The southeast lies on basalts with palatable productive grasslands and some trees such as knobthorn, marula and leadwood. The northern half of the park is, broadly speaking, dominated by mopane with more fertile open grasslands on the eastern basaltic half, and more undulating landscapes with woodlands including bushwillow trees in the north-western quadrant. Fauna is very diverse, with about 150 species of mammals, including many large charismatic predator and grazing species, roughly 50 fish, just over 500 bird, 34 amphibian and 116 reptile species. In addition, there are about 375 alien species, mostly plants, although mostly with restricted distributions and densities.

### 3.5 Socio-Economic Background

**3.5.1 Population and Size**

Limpopo has a population of approximately 5.8 million representing 10.2 percent of the national population, i.e the fifth largest population in the country. The province has experienced a positive growth in its population over a period from 2002 to 2017. In 2002 the provincial population was recorded at 5.0 million and it rose by around 800 thousand
to 5.8 million in 2017. 97.3% of the population is Black, 2.4% is White, 0.2% is Coloured, and 0.1% is Indian/Asian. The province has the smallest percentage and second smallest total number of white South Africans in the country. It also has the highest Black percentage out of all the provinces.

The Northern Sotho people make up the largest percentage of the black population, being 52% of the province. The Tsonga people comprise about 24.0% and the Venda make up about 16.7%. Afrikaners make up the majority of Limpopo's white population, about 95,000 people; English-speaking whites number just over 20,000. Vhembe district has the smallest share of white people in Limpopo, about 5,000 in total, while the Waterberg district has the largest share of whites, with more than 60,000 whites residing there. Coloreds and Asians/Indians make up a very small percentage of the province's total population.

3.5.2 Economic Growth & Setting
The Limpopo economy has managed to sustain a positive growth of 1.2 percent in 2017, which was a recovery from the 2016 negative growth rate of 1.6 percent. The economy of the Province is driven mainly by mining, which contributes percent of the GDP. Minerals mined include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay. Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt. Other key economic drivers include agriculture and tourism. The manufacturing sector in the economy is underperforming when compared nationally. On a national level the manufacturing sector contributed 13 percent in 2016, whilst the contribution of the sector in Limpopo was only 3 percent.

3.5.3 Health
Out of South Africa’s population of over 56.5 million people, only 17.1 percent are covered by a medical scheme. This means that only 9.5 million South Africans have access to private medical care while more than 46 million do not have access to these services. The leading barrier to private healthcare in South Africa continues to be the high price charged by the private health providers and medical aid fees. South Africa has over 4 thousand public health facilities, with an estimate of 13 thousand people visiting each clinic. Similar challenges are experienced within the province. The average life expectancy at birth in Limpopo for males and females increased from an average of 51 years and 55 years for males and females respectively for the period between 2001 and 2006 and has increased to an average of 58 and 64 years respectively for the period between 2011 and 2016. It is expected to improve further in the outer years.

3.5.4 Education
The cumulative number of people possessing different qualifications in the country is increasing year-on year. The number of people with qualifications up to matric is the highest in the country, in the past 10 years for instance, the number rose from 7.4million in 2008 to 10 million in 2016. This represent a 35 percent increase. Unlike the national picture, the number of people in Limpopo with Grade 10 and or 11 is higher than any other level of education, this number grew from 594 thousand in 2008 to 827 thousand in 2016. They are followed by people with matric which is at 704 thousand in 2016. Total number
of enrolments in public schools in Limpopo was on an upward trend until 2016 when the total number of learners was 1.7 million. In 2017, the number noticeably declined by almost 16 thousand learners. The province has also made strides in reducing the number of people who are illiterate from 557 thousand in 2008 to 433 thousand in 2016 representing a decline of 22 percent.

3.5.5 Poverty
In 2015, it was reported that 79.2 percent of individuals with no formal education were poor, compared to only 8.4 percent of individuals who had a post-matric qualification. The percentage of people leaving in poverty (Upper Bound Poverty Line) decreased from 82.4 percent in 2006 to 70.1 percent in 2011. However, in 2015 the percentage grew to 72.4 percent. Despite the decline over time, the percentage of people living in poverty in Limpopo is still very high.

3.5.6 Settlement Patterns
The urban population in Limpopo grew from 807 thousand in 2007 to 1.1 million in 2016. An increase in the rate of urbanisation has added pressure to the local government infrastructure. The majority of people migrating to the cities are unemployed, generally had access to primary or secondary education and occupy menial jobs which are poorly remunerated. In the province for instance, towns like Polokwane, Lephalale, Makhado, Musina and Tzaneen are experiencing an increase in urban population. The share of households occupying formal dwellings increased from 81 percent in 2004 to 90 percent in 2016. The growth in the average household income during the same period has afforded certain households to be in a position to build themselves decent dwellings. About 39 thousand of households in Vhembe and 30 thousand households in Sekhukhune districts do not live in formal dwellings.

3.5.7 Electricity
By 2016, 92.2 percent of households in the province were connected to electricity. The number is likely not to reach 100 percent as there are emerging settlements mushrooming in the province. A handful of households in Sekhukhune (27 thousand) Vhembe (26 thousand), and Capricorn (25 thousand) are without connection to electricity.

3.5.8 Water and Sanitation
At least 66 percent of households in the province have access to water (piped water at or above RDP-level). This indicator has been growing but at a slow pace, between 2004 and 2016 only 38 thousand new households had access to water. The rural districts such as Mopani, Vhembe, and Sekhukhune have a large number of households without access to water recorded at 124 thousand, 131 thousand and 126 thousand respectively. In 2016, 51.1 percent of households had access to hygiene toilets. However, almost half of the population are still without sanitation. Most of the households that still require service delivery prioritisation are in Sekhukhune, Vhembe and Capricorn districts.

3.5.9 Land Use
The Limpopo Province is about 12.6m ha in extent of which 85% is in a natural or near natural state. The formal protected area network is 1,367,044 ha in extent. The major contributor to this is the Kruger National Park, which contributes 72% to the provincial
protected area network (PAN). There are 62 formal protected areas (PAs). The current informal conservation area estimate is 561,185 ha. Thus, a total of 1,928,229 ha in Limpopo Province is currently protected, either formally or informally. This is an increase of 1.87% from 2006 (total of 1892123 ha protected in 2006). There are various anthropomorphic activities such as agricultural conversion, afforestation, urban developments, deforestation and mining taking place on the land. This combined with continued urbanisation and associated urban sprawl, as well as a decrease in household numbers, continue to place pressure on available land.

The agricultural sector is fairly vibrant. About 80% of South Africa's game hunting industry is found in Limpopo. Sunflowers, cotton, maize and peanuts are cultivated in the Bela-Bela and Modimolle areas. Modimolle is also known for its table grapes. Tropical fruit, such as bananas, litchis, pineapples, mangoes and pawpaws, as well as a variety of nuts, are grown in the Tzaneen and Louis Trichardt areas. Tzaneen is also at the centre of extensive citrus, tea and coffee plantations, and a major forestry industry. The province produces 75% of the country’s mangoes, 65% of its papaya, 36% of its tea, 25% of its citrus, bananas, and litchis, 60% of its avocados, two thirds of its tomatoes, 285,000 tons of potatoes. Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, maize, grapes, tobacco and timber. Mining is a major activity in the area. Limpopo's rich mineral deposits include the platinum group metals, iron ore, chromium, high- and middle-grade coking coal, diamonds, antimony, phosphate, and copper, as well as mineral reserves like gold, emeralds, scheelite, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, and mica. Commodities such as black granite, corundum, and feldspar are also found. Mining contributes to over a fifth of the provincial economy. The province has the largest platinum deposit in South Africa.

3.5.10 Tourism
Limpopo Province has varied tourism assets that include mountains in the central highlands, hot springs, a unique cycad forest, golf courses, the Kruger National Park and numerous private game reserves. Kruger, Mapungubwe and Marakele are all national parks run by South African National Parks (SANParks). There are a further 53 provincial nature reserves managed by the Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism. Many of these reserves are communally owned but jointly managed by the province and communities. The combined land area of Limpopo's national, provincial and private game and nature reserves is 3.6-million hectares. Between 2014 and 2018, Limpopo received more than 27.5-million domestic travellers and 8-million international tourists. The tourism sector employs about 22 414 people.
4 DESCRIPTION OF THE ADMINISTRATIVE, POLICY AND REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

This chapter outlines and highlights the relevant institutional and legal as well as policy framework in South Africa which has a direct bearing on the project. The chapter further highlights the World Bank Environmental and Social Standards (ESSs) applicable to the project. Finally, a section on international laws and conventions that bear relevance to the implementation of this project have also been highlighted in this chapter.

4.1 The Legal, Regulatory and Policy Framework

4.1.1 Constitution Act 108 of 1996

In respect of the Bill of Rights included in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (“the Constitution”), the citizens of South Africa have in terms of Section 24, the right to have the environment protected and to live in an environment that is not harmful to human health or well-being. One of the legal instruments developed to ensure that this right is given effect to, is Environmental Impact Assessments (EIA), as detailed in the EIA Regulations (different sets of Regulations promulgated over time in terms of the ECA and NEMA).

The Constitution of South Africa states that “the public interest includes the nation’s commitment to land reform, and to reforms to bring about equitable access to all South Africa’s natural resources” and that “the state must […] foster conditions which enable citizens to gain access to land on an equitable basis”. The Constitution further elaborates that everyone has the right (a) to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing; and (b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that— (i) prevent pollution and ecological degradation; (ii) promote conservation; and (iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development. In addition, “the public interest includes the nation’s commitment to land reform, and to reforms to bring about equitable access to all South Africa’s natural resources”.

4.1.2 National Development Plan 2030

The National Development Plan aims to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030. South Africa can realise these goals by drawing on the energies of its people, growing an inclusive economy, building capabilities, enhancing the capacity of the state, and promoting leadership and partnerships throughout society. The plan focuses on the critical capabilities needed to transform the economy and society. Given the complexity of national development, the plan sets out six interlinked priorities:

- Uniting all South Africans around a common programme to achieve prosperity and equity.
- Promoting active citizenry to strengthen development, democracy and accountability.
- Bringing about faster economic growth, higher investment and greater labour absorption.
- Focusing on key capabilities of people and the state.
- Building a capable and developmental state.
- Encouraging strong leadership throughout society to work together to solve problems.

Of particular importance to this project are the following NDP objectives: i) Environmental Sustainability and Resilience through increased landscapes under protection for biodiversity conservation and investment in rural livelihoods; ii) Economy and Employment through reduced unemployment, broadened ownership of assets and increased GDP; iii) Social Protection through training and skills development for income support and improved participatory governance and co-management for more transparent benefit-sharing with marginal communities; and iv) Inclusive Rural Economy through sustainable rural economic development; promotion of inclusive businesses and value chains; and multi-stakeholder engagement among strategic partners (Government of South Africa, NGOs, and private sector), beneficiaries and PAs authorities.

4.1.3 National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No 107 of 1998, as amended)

The National Environment Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (the NEMA) introduced the environmental impact management regime, in particular the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process. In terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA), as amended (RSA, 1998a) and the EIA Regulations of 2014 (RSA, 2014e), an application for EA for certain listed activities must be submitted to the provincial environmental authority, or the national authority, the DEFF, depending on the types of activities. The current EIA regulations of 2014 (RSA, 2014e), Listing Notice 1 of 2014 (RSA, 2014d), Listing Notice 2 of 2014 (RSA, 2014c), and Listing Notice 3 of 2014 (RSA, 2014b), promulgated in terms of Sections 24(5), 24M and 44 of the NEMA, and subsequent amendments, commenced on 04 December 2014 (RSA, 1998a). Listing Notice 1 (RSA, 2014d) and Listing Notice 3 (RSA, 2014b) lists those activities for which a Basic Assessment process is required, while Listing Notice 2 (RSA, 2014c) lists the activities requiring a full Scoping and EIA process. The EIA Regulations of 2014 (RSA, 2014e) define the processes that must be undertaken to apply for EA.

4.1.4 National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003

National Environmental Management: Protected Areas declares its objectives as “to promote sustainable utilisation of protected areas for the benefit of people, in a manner that would preserve the ecological character of such areas; and to promote participation of local communities in the management of protected areas, where appropriate.” According to this legislation, the purposes of the declaration of areas as protected areas include assisting in ensuring the sustained supply of environmental goods and services; providing for the sustainable use of natural and biological resources; creating or augmenting destinations for nature-based tourism; managing the interrelationship between natural environmental biodiversity, occurring in South Africa, human settlement and economic development.
Among the purposes of the declaration of protected areas the Law mentions the protection of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa’s biological diversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes in a system of protected areas, preservation of the ecological integrity of those areas and conservation or biodiversity in those areas. In addition, the Law stipulates the purposes of assisting in ensuring the sustained supply of environmental goods and services, providing for the sustainable use of natural and biological resources, creating or augmenting destinations for nature-based tourism. The Law also mentions the purpose of managing interrelationship between natural environmental biodiversity, human settlement and economic development and contributing to human, social, cultural, spiritual and economic development.

4.1.5 **Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014.**

Environmental authorization under NEMA follows the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations (GN R. 982, 4 December 2014) pertaining to environmental impact assessments under sections 24(5), 24M and 44 of NEMA. Listing Notices GN R. 983, R. 984, R. 985 of 4 December 2014 define activities that could have a negative impact on the environment that must be investigated and reported following either the Basic Assessment report (regulation 19) or Scoping and Environmental Impact Reporting (S&EIR) procedures (regulations 21 to 24). Listed activities may not commence without an environmental authorization from the competent authority.

The EIA process is outlined in the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations and Listing Notices aimed at implementing chapter 5 of the NEMA. The Regulations provides for listing of activities which may not commence without an environmental authorisation and also identifies a process and reports to be submitted to the Competent Authority for decision making purposes. The process provides the proponent with an opportunity to assess the potential environmental impacts of the proposed development as well as provide for identification of mitigation measures to be in place to ensure that environmental impacts are avoided, minimised or mitigated. Key to this process, is the public participation element, which is also legislated. It forms the integral part of the EIA process and comments and inputs from the interested and/or affected parties are taken into consideration by the competent authority when making decisions on applications. The purpose of the EIA Regulations, 2014, as amended, is to regulate applications for EA, subjected to environmental impact assessment, to avoid or mitigate detrimental impacts on the environment, and to optimise positive environmental impacts.

Activities that may result in substantial impact to the environment have been identified and which require environmental authorisation by following the EIA process. The EIA Regulations require that an EIA process be undertaken for these activities and submitted to the competent authority for consideration. Commencement with any of these identified activities prior to obtaining authorisation from the relevant competent authority is prohibited by these Regulations and constitutes an offence. However, in this project, it is not expected that any activities or sub-projects will be of substantial or high risk; If a sub-project is found to be high or substantial risk, the overall risk rating for the project will be re-visited to determine if it needs to be revised. The PIU must inform the Bank and the risk rating of the main project will be revised accordingly.
4.1.6 **Functional areas of National, Provincial and Local Government Competence**

The environment is included in Schedule 4 to the Constitution as a functional area of concurrent national and provincial legislative competence. This means that both national and provincial government have the power to make legislation that affects the environment. Where a conflict exists between national and provincial legislation, national legislation that applies uniformly with regard to the country as a whole prevails over provincial legislation if any of the conditions set out in section 146 of the Constitution are met. The conditions include where the national legislation is necessary for the protection of the environment and where a matter requires uniformity across the nation and the national legislation is necessary to maintain security or economic unity. Other functional areas relevant to this guideline are also listed in Schedule 4. They include agriculture, soil conservation, nature conservation, housing, public transport, regional planning and development, urban and rural development and pollution control.

Schedule 5 of the Constitution contains matters of exclusive provincial legislative competence. They include provincial planning and provincial roads. The national government has exclusive legislative competence in respect of matters not listed in Schedules 4 and 5; these matters include energy and water (other than sanitation and potable water systems). Local government (municipalities) Municipalities have specific responsibilities in terms of ensuring sustainable development.

The Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000, for example defines development to mean: sustainable development, and includes integrated social, economic, environmental, spatial, infrastructural, institutional, organisational and human resources upliftment of a community aimed at improving the quality of life of its members with specific reference to the poor and other disadvantaged sections of the community; and ensuring that development serves present and future generations;" The Act specifically requires that municipal services be environmentally sustainable. "Environmentally sustainable" in relation to the provision of a municipal service, means the provision of a municipal service in a manner aimed at ensuring that- the risk of harm to the environment and to human health and safety is minimised to the extent reasonably possible under the circumstances; the potential benefits to the environment and to human health and safety are maximised to the extent reasonably possible under the circumstances; and legislation intended to protect the environment and human health and safety is complied with. The Act further provides that the national Minister responsible for Local Government may make regulations or issue guidelines for incentives and penalties to encourage the efficient use of resources when providing services, the recycling of waste and other environmental objectives.

4.1.7 **National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004**

The Act provides for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant protection; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting involving indigenous biological resources; the establishment and functions of a South African National Biodiversity Institute; and for matters connected therewith.
4.1.8 National Water Act (Act No 36 of 1998)
The National Water Act (Act No. 36 of 1998) (NWA) is the primary legislation regulating both the use of water and the pollution of water resources (RSA, 1998b). It is applied and enforced by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS).

Section 19 of the NWA regulates pollution, which is defined as “the direct or indirect alteration of the physical, chemical or biological properties of a water resource so as to make it:

- Less fit for any beneficial purpose for which it may reasonably be expected to be used; or Harmful or potentially harmful to –The welfare, health or safety of human beings;
- Any aquatic or non-aquatic organisms;
- The resource quality; or
- Property.”

The persons held responsible for taking measures to prevent pollution from occurring, recurring or continuing include persons who own, control, occupy or use the land. This obligation or duty of care is initiated where there is any activity or process performed on the land (either presently or in the past) or any other situation which could lead or has led to the pollution of water. The following measures are prescribed in the section 19(2) of the NWA to prevent pollution:

- Cease, modify or control any act or process causing the pollution
- Comply with any prescribed standard or management practice
- Contain or prevent the movement of pollutants
- Eliminate any source of the pollution
- Remedy the effects of pollution
- Remedy the effects of any disturbance to the bed or banks of a watercourse

The NWA states in Section 22(1) that a person may only use water:

- Without a licence –
  - if that water use is permissible under Schedule 1;
  - if that water use is permissible as a continuation of an existing lawful use; or
  - if that water use is permissible in terms of a general authorisation issued under section 39. If the water use is authorised by a licence under this Act; or
- If the responsible authority has dispensed with a licence requirement under subsection (3).

Water use is defined in Section 21 of the NWA (RSA, 1998a).

4.1.9 Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983);
An Act to provide for control over the utilization of the natural agricultural resources of the Republic in order to promote the conservation of the soil, the water sources and the vegetation and the combating of weeds and invader plants; and for matters connected therewith.
Natural forests and woodlands form an important part of that environment and need to be conserved and developed according to the principles of sustainable management. In terms of section 7(1) of the National Forests Act, 1998, no person may cut, disturb, damage or destroy any indigenous tree in, or remove or receive any such tree from, a natural forest except in terms of :- (a) license issued under subsection (4) or section 23; or (b) an exemption from the provisions of subsection (4) published by the Minister in the Gazette. Regulations associated with the national Forests Act were published as Government Notice No. R466 (29 April 2009).

The Act is enforced by Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) http://www.daff.gov.za/. 4.2.5 World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act No, 49 of 1999)
This Act incorporates of the World Heritage Convention into South African law, providing for enforcement and implementation of the World Heritage Convention in South Africa, the recognition and establishment of World Heritage Sites and the establishment of Authorities and the granting of additional powers to existing, organs of state; the powers and duties of such Authorities, especially those safeguarding the integrity of World Heritage Sites. This legislation also defines the procedures for the establishment of Boards and Executive Staff Components of the Authorities, integrated management plans and land matters in relation to World Heritage Sites.

The purpose of this Act is inter alia, to provide for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa’s biological biodiversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes.

4.1.12 Environmental Conservation Act (Act No. 73 of 1989)
The Act provides for the effective protection and controlled utilization of the environment and for the matters incidental thereto.

4.1.13 National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)
The NHRA is the overarching legislation that protects and regulates the management of heritage resources in South Africa, with specific reference to the following Sections:
5. General principles for HRM
6. Principles for management of heritage resources
7. Heritage assessment criteria and grading
35. Protection of palaeontological, archaeological and meteorite resources
38. Heritage resources management

The Act requires that Heritage Resources Authorities (HRAs), in this case SAHRA and NWPHRA, be notified as early as possible of any developments that may exceed certain minimum thresholds in terms of Section 38(1), or when assessments of impacts on heritage resources are required by other legislation in terms of Section 38(8) of the Act.
4.1.14 *World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act No, 49 of 1999)*

This Act incorporates the World Heritage Convention into South African law, providing for enforcement and implementation of the World Heritage Convention in South Africa, the recognition and establishment of World Heritage Sites and the establishment of Authorities and the granting of additional powers to existing organs of state; the powers and duties of such Authorities, especially those safeguarding the integrity of World Heritage Sites. This legislation also defines the procedures for the establishment of Boards and Executive Staff Components of the Authorities, integrated management plans and land matters in relation to World Heritage Sites. On the 18th April 2011, the Minister of Water and Environmental Affairs approved the Integrated Management Plan of the iSimangaliso Wetland park in terms of section 26(4) of the World heritage Convention Act, 1999 that formalised the Zone of Influence representing a buffer zone around the area.

4.1.15 *National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act 24 of 2008*

To establish a system of integrated coastal and estuarine management in the Republic, including norms, standards and policies, in order to promote the conservation of the coastal environment, and maintain the natural attributes of coastal landscapes and seascapes, and to ensure that development and the use of natural resources within the coastal zone is [sic] socially and economically justifiable and ecologically sustainable; to define rights and duties in relation to coastal areas; to determine the responsibilities of organs of state in relation to coastal areas; to prohibit incineration at sea; to control dumping at sea, pollution in the coastal zone, inappropriate development of the coastal environment and other adverse effects on the coastal environment; to give effect to South Africa's international obligations in relation to coastal matters; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

4.1.16 *National Environmental Management: National Air Quality Act*

The main objectives of the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (Act No. 39 of 2004) (NEMA: AQA) are to protect the environment by providing reasonable legislative and other measures to 9 (RSA, 2004): 
- Prevent air pollution and ecological degradation;
- Promote conservation; and
- Secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development in alignment with Sections 24a and 24b of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. The NEMA: AQA has devolved the responsibility for air quality management from the national sphere of government to local spheres of government (district and local municipal authorities), who are tasked with baseline characterization, management and operation of ambient monitoring networks, licensing of listed activities, and development of emissions reduction strategies. The NEMA: AQA makes provision for the setting and formulation of national ambient air quality and emission standards. If the need arises, these standards can be set more stringently on a provincial and local level.

4.1.17 *Occupational Health and Safety Act 1993*

The objective of this Act is to provide for the health and safety of persons at work and for the health and safety of persons in connection with the use of plant and machinery; the protection of persons other than persons at work against hazards to health and safety arising out of or in connection with the activities of persons at work; to establish an advisory council for occupational health and safety.
4.1.18  **National Health Act 2003**
The objective of this Act is to provide a framework for a structured uniform health system within the Republic, taking into account the obligations imposed by the Constitution and other laws on the national, provincial and local governments with regard to health services.

4.1.19  **Physical Planning Act 1991**
The objective of this Act is to promote the orderly physical development of the Republic, and for that purpose to provide for the division of the Republic into regions, for the preparation of national development plans, regional development plans, regional structure plans and urban structural plans by the various authorities responsible for physical planning.

4.1.20  **Basic Conditions of Employment 1991**
The Basic Conditions of Employment Act, No 75 of 1997 gives effect to the right to fair labour practices referred to in section 23(1) of the Constitution by establishing and making provision for the regulation of basic conditions of employment; and thereby to comply with the obligations of the Republic as a member state of the International Labour Organisation. The Basic Conditions of Employment Amendment Act, No 20 of 2013 was published and became effective on 1 September 2014.

4.1.21  **Labour Relations Act 1995**
The Labour Relations Act aims to promote economic development, social justice, labour peace and democracy in the workplace. It sets out to achieve this by fulfilling the primary objectives of the Act, which are to give effect to and regulate the fundamental rights conferred by section 27 of the Constitution, including the right to fair labour practices, to form and join trade unions and employer’s organisations, to organise and bargain collectively, and to strike and lock out; to provide a framework for regulating the relationship between employees and their unions on the one hand, and employers and their organisations on the other hand. At the same time it also encourages employers and employees to regulate relations between themselves; and to promote orderly collective bargaining, collective bargaining at sectoral level, employee participation in decision-making in the workplace and the effective resolution of labour disputes.

4.1.22  **Employment Equity Act 1998**
The Employment Equity Act promotes equity in the workplace, ensures that all employees receive equal opportunities and that employees are treated fairly by their employers. The law protects you from unfair treatment and any form of discrimination. The law states that your employer can't discriminate against you directly or indirectly through employment policy or practice on the grounds of race, gender, pregnancy, marital status, family responsibility, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, HIV status, conscience, belief, political opinion, culture, language, and birth.

The law aims to redress injustices of the past by implementing affirmative action measures. According to the legislation, it isn't unfair discrimination to promote affirmative action...
consistent with the Act or to prefer or exclude any person on the basis of an inherent job requirement.

4.1.23  **Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act 2000**

In terms of the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 4 of 2000 (PEPUDA), which gives expression to the right to equality, section 8 stipulates that no person may be unfairly discriminated against on the grounds of gender, expressly including gender-based violence. Section 8 of PEPUDA goes onto prohibit any limitation of women’s access to social services, such as health or education, and the denial or systemic inequality of access to opportunities.

4.1.24  **Domestic Violence Act 1998**

The Domestic Violence Act 116 of 1998 (“the DVA”) is the law that deals with domestic violence in South Africa. This law exists to give people who are experiencing domestic violence the best possible protection that the law can, and it commits the government to stopping domestic violence.

4.1.25  **Criminal Law Amendment Act 1991**

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act No. 32 of 2007 - also referred to as the Sexual Offences Act) is an act of the Parliament of South Africa that reformed and codified the law relating to sex offences. It repealed various common law crimes (including rape and indecent assault) and replaced them with statutory crimes defined on a gender-neutral basis. It expanded the definition of rape, previously limited to vaginal sex, to include all non-consensual penetration; and it equalised the age of consent for heterosexual and homosexual sex at 16. The act provides various services to the victims of sexual offences, including free post-exposure prophylaxis for HIV, and the ability to obtain a court order to compel HIV testing of the alleged offender. It also created the National Register for Sex Offenders, which records the details of those convicted of sexual offences against children or people who are mentally disabled.

4.1.26  **Restitution of Land Rights Act 2003**

In 1994, the first law to be passed by the first democratically elected parliament was the Restitution of Land Rights Act (Act 22 of 1994). This was done with the conscious acknowledgement that land justice is important to deal with the challenges of poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The Act makes provision for the restitution of rights in land to persons or communities dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913 as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices. To administer this task, the Act established a Commission on Restitution of Land Rights and a Land Claims Court. The Minister is authorised to purchase, acquire in any other manner or expropriate land or rights in land for the purpose of restitution awards.

4.1.27  **Communal Property Association Act 1996**

The Communal Property Association Act makes provision for communities to form juristic persons, to be known as communal property associations, in order to acquire, hold and
manage property on a basis agreed to by members of a community. This has to be done in terms of a written constitution.

4.2 Relevant Environmental and Social Institutions

4.2.1 Department of Environment, Fisheries and Forestry (DEFF)
The DEFF is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or wellbeing, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community. In terms of authorization, DEFF is mandated to provide;

- Environmental Authorization
- Waste Management License
- Atmospheric Emission License

4.2.2 Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries was disestablished in June 2019. The agriculture function was incorporated into the new Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD), while the forestry and fisheries functions were incorporated into the new Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries. The mission of the Department of Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development (DALRRD) is to initiate, facilitate, coordinate, catalyse and implement an integrated rural development programme.

The Department's strategic objectives are: corporate governance and service excellence through compliance within the legal framework; land administration and spatial planning for integrated and sustainable growth and development, with a bias towards rural areas; equitable access to and sustainable use of land for development; improved rural services to support sustainable livelihoods; improved access to sustainable employment and skills development opportunities; promotion of economically, socially and environmentally viable rural enterprises and industries; and restoration of land rights.

4.2.3 Department of Human Settlement Water and Sanitation
The Department of Water and Sanitation's (DWS) legislative mandate seeks to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled in a sustainable manner for the benefit of all people and the environment. In terms of authorization, DHSWS is mandated to provide;

- Water Use Licence, including General Authorisation
- Concurrence record of decisions (related to waste licences and environmental authorisations)

4.2.4 The South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA)
SAHRA is mandated to coordinate the identification and management of the national estate. The aims are to introduce an integrated system for the identification, assessment and management of the heritage resources and to enable provincial and local authorities to
adopt powers to protect and manage them. In terms of authorization, SAHRA is mandated to provide;

- Approvals with regards to Heritage Impact Assessments

4.2.5 Provincial Government

The nine provinces in South Africa are governed by provincial governments which form the second layer of government, between the national government and the municipalities. The provincial governments are established, and their structure defined, by Chapter Six of the Constitution of South Africa.

The powers of the provincial governments are circumscribed by the national constitution, which limits them to certain listed "functional areas". In some areas the provincial governments' powers are concurrent with those of the national government, while in other areas the provincial governments have exclusive powers. The constitution prescribes a principle of "co-operative government" whereby the various layers of government must co-ordinate their actions and legislation; it also lays down a series of rules for resolving conflicts between national and provincial legislation. The relevant provincial departments dealing with social and environmental issues and authorisations are as follows:

- **Eastern Cape Provincial Government**
  - Department of Finance, Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
  - Department of Social Development
  - Department of Rural Development and Agrarian Reform
  - Department of Health

- **KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government**
  - Department of Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
  - Department of Social Development
  - Department of Agricultural and Rural Development
  - Department of Health

- **Limpopo Provincial Government**
  - Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
  - Department of Social Development
  - Department of Agriculture and Rural Development
  - Department of Health

4.2.6 Local and District Municipalities

Local and district municipalities have the following mandates with respect to environmental and social authorization namely:
• Atmospheric Emission Licences
• Coastal Conservation Area
• Biodiversity permit

The relevant local and district municipality departments dealing with social and environmental issues and authorisations are as follows:

• **Eastern Cape**
  o Amathole District Municipality
    - Ngqushwa Local Municipality
  o Sarah Baartman District Municipality
    - Sunday’s River Valley Local Municipality

• **KwaZulu-Natal**
  o uMkhanyakude District Municipality
    - uMhlabuyalingana Local Municipality
    - Big Five Hlabisa Local Municipality

• **Limpopo**
  o Vhembe District Municipality
    - Collins Chabane Local Municipality
  o Mopani District Municipality
    - Greater Giyani Local Municipality
    - Ba-Phalaborwa Local Municipality

4.2.7 **Non-Governmental Organisations**

Key Non-Governmental Organisations working on social and environmental issues in the three project landscapes include the following:

• **Eastern Cape**
  o Eastern Cape Non-Governmental Coalition (ECNGOC) - HIV/AIDS, land redistribution, local governance and gender
  o Wilderness Foundation Africa – protect and sustain wildlife and wilderness through integrated conservation and education programmes
  o Mvula Trust – water and sanitation development

• **KwaZulu-Natal**
  o Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa (WESSA) – supports environmental and conservation projects
• Coastwatch KZN – protection and sustainable management of natural resources of the coastal zone and offshore marine resources
• Conservation Outcomes – provide support to land that is being developed and managed for biodiversity conservation outside traditional state protected areas
• WWF-SA – programmes and projects aimed at looking after natural resources (oceans, land and wildlife) so that people can benefit from food, water and a healthy climate
• Mvula Trust – water and sanitation development

**Limpopo**

• Conservation Outcomes – provide support to land that is being developed and managed for biodiversity conservation outside traditional state protected areas
• Mvula Trust – water and sanitation development

### 4.3 Environmental and Social Impact Assessment Process

The assessment process, whether it is a Basic Assessment or Scoping and Impact Assessment (IA), is made up of the following three steps.

- **Application or notification phase:** This involves completion of information in an application form (in the case of scoping and ESIA) or a notification form (in the case of Basic Assessment) for submission to the competent authority. This step in the process is largely for administrative purposes, since it is the means for registering the project (which will then be allocated a reference number and case officer). It is advisable for the Applicant and the EAP to confirm the activities for which application is being made, particularly when the final documentation is submitted (i.e. Basic Assessment Report (BAR) or EIR). Projects can change and evolve during the EIA process.

- **Scoping phase:** The aim of the scoping phase is to address the question: 'What issues and alternatives need further investigation. While the scoping phase culminates in a scoping report in the scoping/ESIA process, it is done in preparation for and prior to the compilation of the BAR in the basic assessment process.

- **Impact Assessment phase**

**Social:** The project will be required to conduct a Rapid Social Impact Assessment in the three nodes (SIA)- the study will provide a socio-economic baseline data on communities residing adjacent to the PAs in the three selected nodes; i) develop a “Benefit Sharing Manual” where; a) benefit sharing mechanisms will be identified (governance model), b) benefit sharing eligibility criteria will be spelled out, c) how benefit sharing will be calculated, d) procedures for claiming benefits etc will be set out.
**Environment:**
The Environmental Impact Report (EIR) includes a draft environmental management programme (EMP) and Specialist reports that generate new knowledge in order to address key issues in a particular field, for example, an atmospheric emissions study that uses dispersion models to determine the extent of emissions and likely spread of air pollutants. The EIR and Specialist reports are made available for comment to all registered interested and affected parties, including all State departments that administer laws relating to the environment. The revised EIR and Specialist reports will be updated to take into account any comments from interested and affected parties.

The requirement to obtain environmental authorization for certain development proposals or projects is legislated in NEMA. The EIA Regulations make provision for two types or levels of assessment, namely Basic Assessment and Scoping and EIA. The EIA regulations specify that:

- All activities that appear in Listing Notice 1 (GN No. R. 386 of 21 April 2006) require a Basic Assessment;
- All activities that appear in Listing Notice 2 (GN No. R. 387 of 21 April 2006) are subject to scoping and EIA; and
- Where an application involves activities from both Listing Notices, scoping and EIA must be undertaken.

Furthermore, the EIA regulations make provision for an application to also be subjected to the scoping and EIA process on the basis of the results of the Basic Assessment. If an applicant intends to undertake an activity to which basic assessment must be applied and based on the advice of the EAP is of the view that is unlikely that the national or provincial competent authority will be able to reach a decision based on the information contained in the basic assessment report, the applicant may apply for permission to apply scoping instead of basic assessment to the application.
4.4 International Environmental and Social Management Requirements

There are over 500 Multilateral Environmental Agreements (MEAs) registered with the United Nations. These agreements require country level commitments that can be fostered through a cooperative regional approach. Republic of South Africa is a signatory to several international treaties and conventions that are relevant to the sectors that the proposed sub projects under the project. The conventions include among others -


Signed by 150 government leaders at the 1992 Rio Earth Summit, the Convention on Biological Diversity is dedicated to promoting sustainable development. Conceived as a practical tool for translating the principles of Agenda 21 into reality, the Convention recognizes that biological diversity is about more than plants, animals and microorganisms and their ecosystems – it is about people and our need for food security, medicines, fresh air and water, shelter, and a clean and healthy environment in which to live.
Convention to Combat Desertification (1994)
The Convention aims to improve the living conditions of vulnerable populations living in arid, semi-arid and dry sub-humid areas. Convention on Biological Diversity (1994) The Convention aims to encourage sustainable development that considers biodiversity. Some of the strategies in place to achieve this are to decrease the rate of loss of natural habitats, establish conservation areas, restore degraded areas and protect environments susceptible to human impacts.

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (1992)
The Convention aims to limit human activities contributing to climate change and to come up with solutions to curb the negative results of climate change.

The Convention aims to ensure that the international trade of specimens (fauna and flora) does not threaten their survival.

RAMSAR Convention (1971)
The Convention aims for international cooperation and national action to protect wetlands and their resources.

Declaration of Commitment on HIV/AIDS (2001)
The Declaration aims to review and address the problem of HIV/AIDS in all its aspects as well as to secure a global commitment to enhancing coordination and intensification of national, regional and international efforts to combat it in a comprehensive manner.

The aim is to ensure that all individuals are provided with the opportunity to earn a sustainable livelihood. In order to achieve this the UN will need to implement policies and strategies that promote adequate levels of funding and focus on integrated human development.

United National Global Compact
To encourage businesses worldwide to adopt sustainable and socially responsible policies, and to report on their implementation. Its primary objectives are to mainstream its ten principles in business activities around the world catalyse actions in support of broader UN goals, such as the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs).

World Heritage Convention 1977
Convention concerning the protection of the world cultural and natural heritage

Africa Convention on Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources 2003
To encourage conservation, utilisation and development of soil, water, flora and fauna for the present and future welfare of mankind, from an economic, nutritional, scientific, educational, cultural and aesthetic point of view.
5 APPLICABILITY OF WORLD BANK ENVIRONMENTAL & SOCIAL STANDARDS

Table 2. World Bank ESSs and its Applicability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank ES Standard</th>
<th>Summary of core requirements</th>
<th>Potential for Applicability</th>
<th>Remarks or recommendation for proposed Project</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESS1: Assessment and Management of Environmental and Social Risks and Impacts</td>
<td>To identify, evaluate and manage the environment and social risks and impacts of the Project in a manner consistent with the ESSs. ESS1 applies to all Projects supported by the Bank. Therefore, an environmental and social assessment is conducted including stakeholder engagement.</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>The Environmental risk classification of the project is Moderate under the ESS1. The project is expected to generate significant environmental benefits resulting from the proposed activities on management, restoration and conservation of terrestrial and aquatic ecological areas while creating employment and generating livelihoods for the local communities. The project is not expected to finance any activities which are high or substantial risk or which can have significant or irreversible impacts. The subprojects to be financed under the project are expected to be of low and moderate levels of risk such upgrading of access roads or other similar minor infrastructural upgrades and construction. Capacity building and training could have potential impacts depending on their nature, types, scale and location. Other areas of risk could be associated with the considerations relating to stability, conflict or security. Risks are also associated with the capacity and commitment of the Borrower (including sub-implementing agencies) to manage the environmental and social risks and impacts in a manner consistent with the ESSs. This ESMF has been prepared to ensure that the Project activities are carried out in an environmentally responsible and socially acceptable manner. The Bank will require the implementing agencies to carry out appropriate environmental and social assessment of subprojects, depending on their levels of risks and impacts, which will be followed by assessments and development and implementation of relevant instruments, in accordance with national law and any requirement of the ESSs that the Bank deems relevant to such subprojects. (Detailed in Section 7) The social risk rating is currently Substantial The Project does not involve activities with a potential to harm the population, their livelihoods or assets. However, there are key social concerns that provide for potential social risks and impacts associated with this project that are mostly temporary, predictable and reversible with substantial investment and time and include the benefits sharing challenges given the potential exclusion of either individuals or communities, conflicts among the various stakeholders' groups due to varying needs and interests, and potential land access restrictions through expanded conservation stewardship agreements. In addition, the number and complexity of the institutions involved in the implementation of this project as well as their capacity to...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2. World Bank ESSs and its Applicability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank ES Standard</th>
<th>Summary of core requirements</th>
<th>Potential for Applicability</th>
<th>Remarks or recommendation for proposed Project</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ESS2: Labor and Working Conditions</td>
<td>It promotes health and safety at workplaces. During Project implementation, labor management procedures such as working hours, provision of separate sanitation facilities for both males and females, lighting and provision of safe drinking water to mention a few will be developed prior to Project effectiveness.</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>ESS2 is relevant to both the staff contracted to provide services directly under the project (training, planning, technical assistance etc.) and to businesses/entrepreneurs who will receive support. Minor construction activities are envisaged for the project, but these will be temporary, localized and with limited foot print and therefore does not entail a significant amount of labor. Any labor required for the implementation will be locally hired, with the exception of skilled workers who cannot be found in the protected areas landscapes. No labor camps are anticipated and no influx of workforce is anticipated based on the proposed project structure. Businesses and entrepreneurs who qualify for support will be required to follow labor management procedures (LMP), as well as relevant environmental and social mitigation measures, specified in the ESMF. Node coordinators must ensure, as part of the screening, that labor rights and occupational health and safety are adhered to, and verify that any workers engaged are aware of the relevant provisions of these procedures. The occupational health and safety measures will be in line with World Bank Group General Environment, Health and Safety Guidelines. All labor contractors, including consultant contracts, will include Codes of Conduct related to Health and Safety, as well as non-tolerance for sexual harassment and gender-based violence (GBV). Labor Management Procedures are therefore being annexed to this ESMF, as guidance during project implementation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS3: Resource Efficiency and Pollution Prevention and Management</td>
<td>To promote the sustainable use of resources, including energy, water and raw materials. Aim is to reduce deforestation, enhance the environmental contribution of forested</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>This Project is intended to bring about positive changes in the protection, management, and sustainable utilization of park resources. ESS3 is relevant given that the project will finance development of sustainable businesses and value chains including agricultural related activities such as post-harvest management, processing and commercialization of agricultural products. With the proposed activities known at this time, it is unlikely that hazardous waste will be produced, nor will there be release of pollutants into the air. Sub-projects will be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>World Bank ES Standard</td>
<td>Summary of core requirements</td>
<td>Potential for Applicability</td>
<td>Remarks or recommendation for proposed Project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS4: Community Health and Safety</td>
<td>To anticipate and avoid adverse impacts on the health and safety of Project-affected communities during the Project life cycle from both routine and non-routine circumstances.</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>The project is not expected to cause any adverse safety and health impacts on the communities since the project is not funding any large civil works on the ground. To mitigate risks, provision of adequate equipment, safety awareness by contractors and implementing agencies, signage, road flaggers, proper training for operators of heavy equipment will be undertaken. The value chain subprojects will not be large-scale and therefore it is not expected that there will be an influx of workers into the sub-projects areas. Labour Management plan and measures to secure community health and safety, including Gender Based Violence are defined in the ESMF and will need to be captured in the corresponding instruments and bidding documents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS5: Land Acquisition, Restrictions on Land Use and Involuntary Resettlement</td>
<td>To avoid involuntary resettlement or, when unavoidable, minimize involuntary resettlement by exploring Project design alternatives.</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>Involuntary resettlement is not expected to occur through the project activities as the project will support the expansion of protected areas into community and private-owned areas following the Biodiversity Stewardship model and takes into consideration the ongoing affirmative action programs and land restitution efforts in South Africa. However, restrictions on land use for the expansion of the Protected Areas will likely occur and as such a Process Framework (PF) has been developed in accordance with ESS5 to guide community entrance into biodiversity stewardship. The PF builds substantively on the existing participatory framework for community biodiversity stewardship developed by SANBI. As part of the integrated project effort, community-level governance structures will benefit through strengthening of capacity for negotiation of land tenure security and co-management of natural resources to ensure equitable benefit sharing. Where the project supports community biodiversity stewardship, a detailed Action Plan will be developed in accordance with the PF. Based on site visits to potential community conservation areas, the restrictions on existing uses of land is expected to be minor and can be managed with addition of specialist staff, overseen by SANBI. Based on available information, it is not expected that these restrictions would potentially affect informal users, tenants and workers, nor displacing informal or illegal activities to other nearby areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS6: Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable</td>
<td>To protect and conserve biodiversity and its habitats. The applicability of this ESS is established during the</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>The project is designed to generate positive environment benefits by promoting conservation-compatible development in local communities within the Addo Elephant National Park, Greater Fish Nature Reserve, Kruger National Park and the iSimangaliso Wetland Park landscapes and, in turn, strengthen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2. World Bank ESSs and its Applicability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank ES Standard</th>
<th>Summary of core requirements</th>
<th>Potential for Applicability</th>
<th>Remarks or recommendation for proposed Project</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Management of Living Natural Resources</td>
<td>environmental and social assessment described in ESS1. The needs shall be applied to all project activities that potentially affect biodiversity or habitats, either positively or negatively, directly or indirectly, or that depend upon biodiversity for their success. It will include also project activities that involve primary production and/or harvesting of living natural resources.</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td>long-term support for conservation of the protected areas. Therefore, adverse impacts to biodiversity are anticipated to be limited. However, these protected areas in South Africa have a number of threatened/endangered species according to the IUCN Classification and some of the areas are designated as World Heritage sites and Ramsar wetlands. This requires implementation and monitoring of stringent measures, many of which are in place and being monitored by the different agencies in the 3 provinces. Potential impacts of attracting more people to protected and sensitive areas through support for economic activities will need to be managed and proportionate mitigation measures need to be identified in the site-specific instruments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS7: Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities</td>
<td>To ensure that the development process fosters full respect for the human rights, dignity, aspirations, Identity, culture, and natural resource-based livelihoods of Indigenous Peoples/Sub-Saharan African Historically Underserved Traditional Local Communities.</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS8: Cultural Heritage</td>
<td>To protect cultural heritage from the adverse impacts of Project activities and support its preservation.</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>No cultural heritage sites or culturally sensitive areas for communities within Project area has been cited to be in threat. The ESMF describes the process for undertaking chance finds procedures in addressing possible encounters of any archaeological resources during Project implementation as per national regulations. In case of non-physical cultural heritage on specific sites, mitigation measures will be determined during consultation for implementation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS9: Financial Intermediaries</td>
<td>To set out how financial intermediaries will assess and manage environmental and social risks and impacts associated with the project activities they finance.</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESS10: Stakeholder Engagement and Information Disclosure</td>
<td>To establish a systematic approach to stakeholder engagement that will help Project identify stakeholders and build and maintain a</td>
<td>Applicable</td>
<td>The project is engaged in continuous stakeholder engagement from identification to date and these will continue throughout implementation. A stakeholder mapping was undertaken, and Stakeholder Engagement Plan has been prepared to guide the project as per the ESF requirement. A GRM will also form part of implementation to address any emerging concerns and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 2. World Bank ESSs and its Applicability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>World Bank ES Standard</th>
<th>Summary of core requirements</th>
<th>Potential for Applicability</th>
<th>Remarks or recommendation for proposed Project</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>constructive relationship with them, in particular Project-affected parties. To provide Project-affected parties with accessible and inclusive means to raise issues and grievances and allow Project to respond to and manage such grievances.</td>
<td>complaints from the project. Prior to appraisal of the project, this ESMF will be disclosed in country as well as in the Bank’s infoshop. If there are any changes, a final version will be disclosed in the same manner and places described later.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6 DETERMINATION OF POTENTIAL ENVIRONMENT AND SOCIAL IMPACTS

Overall Project implementation is expected to have positive environmental and social impacts. Thus, it is important to identify potential risks early in Project preparation and design, both in terms of the Project’s overall design and of the specific investment activities. Impacts can be divided into negative environmental and social impacts and these depend specifically on the size and nature of Project activities and the environmental and social sensitivities associated with the location of these activities.

6.1 Positive Impacts

The project’s primary activities can be expected to yield multiple categories of benefits. Quantifiable benefits include: - restoration and conservation of terrestrial and aquatic ecological process and management of the Addo Elephant National Park, Greater Fish Nature Reserve, iSimangaliso Wetland Park and the Kruger National Park as well as support for a number of local development initiatives, including employment and livelihood generating activities. improved land cover due to rehabilitation efforts, reduced forest loss and encroachment, improved livelihoods/earnings/job opportunities for local people, increases in eco-tourism arrivals / earnings, and multiplier economic benefits from the jobs and tourism increases. Though it is not a primary purpose of the project, some carbon sequestration or reduced emissions could be expected (and quantified) based on improved agricultural practices and reduced encroachment on natural areas. Less tangible benefits include strengthened institutions, habitat connectivity, greater economic opportunity, and improved environmental service delivery, such as water quality.

6.2 Potential Adverse Impacts

The potential adverse environmental and social impacts and risks of the Project are numerous and this ESMF highlights these impacts which are broad and cross cutting across most of the envisaged investments projects. However, the specific adverse impacts for each investment will be distinguished during the preparation of the specific ESIA/ESMP based on the sub project investment environmental category once the screening process is complete.

6.3 Adverse Environmental Impacts

6.3.1 Loss of Flora

There will be vegetation loss during the construction phase (for project investments) either to pave way for access roads, and actual project construction among others. The vegetation will be cleared so that the area where the construction work is to take place is clear for the construction work to be performed. The construction works will involve bush clearing, removal of topsoil, excavation and mass haulage. These activities could expose the land to elements of erosion such as wind and water and could trigger the process of land degradation. Loss of Fauna
Potential investments are expected to be small-scale and therefore will not result in destruction of wild fauna habitat or fragmentation of ecosystems, isolation of species population or impact migratory routes. Construction (on site and along road rehabilitation profile/borrow pit sites) are expected to be of small scale and within existing demarcated sites, which have been defined by the project implementing agencies.

6.3.2 Soil Erosion
Soil erosion could occur during the construction phase as a result of the intensive activities that will be going on in the construction areas especially land clearing. The equipment and machines that shall be used in the construction process could interfere with the soil structure making it loose hence liable to erosion.

6.3.3 Decreased Water Quality
Increase in suspended particles due to construction works; risk of human contamination from construction sites could affect the water quality especially if investment projects are relatively close to natural water bodies.

6.3.4 Borrow Pits and Quarry Sites
Borrow pits and quarry are sites where stone, sand, gravel, till, clay, or other granular soils are extracted for construction of the various investments. Environmental impacts of pit and quarry development can include the loss, reduction or disturbance to wildlife and habitat, erosion, dust, soil/groundwater contamination, damage to historic resources, waste disposal, noise, and aesthetics.

6.3.5 Decreased Air Quality
Airborne dust will be caused by excavation, vehicle movement hence engine combustion and materials handling, particularly from construction sites during the construction phase of the identified investments. Uncovered stockpiles and plant operations are another source of dust. Air pollution will be further caused by emissions from vehicles and construction machinery. There will be decreased air quality due to dust, suspended particles, hydrocarbon vapours, oxides of nitrogen and sulphur (NOx and SOx) and Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) among other emissions.

6.3.6 Noise and Vibration Impacts
Construction activities could result in significant noise impacts so as to impact on general well-being, health and functioning. Infrastructure developments involving the use of equipment that emit incessant noise usually harmful to the environment. Introduction of new sources of noise is an issue in areas where ambient noise levels have been low.

6.3.7 Workers Health and Safety
Occupation health and safety of the workers during construction activities is likely to be a concern due to the accidents that could occur in construction sites resulting in loss of life, limbs, injuries among others.

6.3.8 Solid and Effluent Waste Generation and Pollution
Solid waste issue is a potential adverse impact that will be as a result of abandonment of litter/construction materials on site. These could include construction waste, solid and liquid chemicals and municipal waste or discarded remnants from rehabilitation activities.
6.3.9 Visual Intrusion:
Development of tourism lodges and infrastructure, wildlife meat processing facilities and unsightly earthworks and borrow pits during construction may be a source of visual related impacts especially through scarring of landscapes. During operations, visual intrusion of equipment on site may be seen as a negative impact at the local level.

6.4 Social Impacts

6.4.1 Diseases Spread—Public Health
There is a potential risk that the construction process for most of the investment projects could increase HIV/AIDS prevalence in the project areas especially through interactions of the locals with the labour forces. Increase in risk of sexually transmitted diseases, such as HIV/AIDS etc. due to influx of migrant workers; solid waste and effluent discharge from construction camps; risk of increase in vectors of schistosomiasis, river blindness, Lymphatic filariasis (elephantiasis) and malaria due to stagnant water associated with construction works/borrow pits etc.

6.4.2 Incessant Traffic including accidents
Traffic congestion from construction and operation phases of the investments and could potentially cause disruption, health and safety impacts, as well as economic impacts. The use of construction vehicles and machineries in project sites could cause increased traffic and flow of vehicles.

6.4.3 Increased Crime and In-Migration
The increase in the number of people in a specific project area or site especially during construction has the potential to lead to a number of negative socio-economic impacts, including increased insecurity and community conflicts, increased incidences of diseases; increased risk of accidents and occupational hazards; and immigration of construction workers and labour force management challenges.

6.4.4 Labor Influx Impacts
The Project will emphasize the need to engage and hire local labour wherever possible to have a minimum influx of workers and provide opportunities to local populations. Regardless, all consultants and workers will be required to sign Code of Conducts to encourage respectful behaviour. Given the fact that project is not associated with large infrastructure development projects, the impacts associated with influx of workers and followers are likely to be low.

The increase in the number of people in a specific project area or site especially during construction has the potential to lead to a number of negative socio-economic impacts, including increased insecurity and community conflicts, increased incidences of diseases; increased risk of accidents and occupational hazards; and immigration of construction workers and labour force management challenges. The construction activities of sub project investments may require recruitment of “foreign” skilled and unskilled labour that could trigger conflict, resentment and tension by the local communities over perceived inequities in distribution of job opportunities by the local communities.
6.4.5 **Risk to Community Health and Safety**

The project is not expected to cause any adverse health and safety impacts on the communities since the project is not funding any large-scale civil works on the ground. A preliminary GBV risk screening has been undertaken and the risk has been classified as Low. The value chain sub-projects will not be large-scale and therefore it is not expected that there will be an influx of workers into the sub-projects areas. However, in the event that influx would occur the ESMF and subsequent ESMPs will include mitigation measures for labor influx management. In addition, there may be minor community health and safety related impacts during the sub-projects preparation, mitigation measures for such potential impacts will be captured in the corresponding ESMP that will be developed. Furthermore, potential risks of GBV/SEA will be considered in subsequent ESMPs and measures will be put in place to mitigate and manage any risks of GBV/SEA incidents.

6.4.6 Risks of Restrictions on Access to Resources

The establishment of community conservations areas may induce voluntary restrictions of access to livelihoods and resources, such as access to grazing areas and the harvesting of non-timber forest products. However, any restrictions on resource use patterns and activities will be voluntary and reached on a consensus basis facilitated through existing community governance structures. Such restrictions will be assessed following the provisions in the PF and alternative livelihoods and resources must be provided to mitigate any adverse impacts to communities and/or individuals.

Involuntary resettlement is not expected to occur through the project activities as the project will support the expansion of protected areas into community and private-owned areas following the Biodiversity Stewardship model and takes into consideration the ongoing affirmative action programs and land restitution efforts in South Africa. However, restrictions on land use for the expansion of the Protected Areas will likely occur and as such a Process Framework (PF) has been developed in accordance with ESS5 to guide community entrance into biodiversity stewardship. The PF builds substantively on the existing participatory framework for community biodiversity stewardship developed by SANBI. As part of the integrated project effort, community-level governance structures will benefit through strengthening of capacity for negotiation of land tenure security and co-management of natural resources to ensure equitable benefit sharing. Where the project supports community biodiversity stewardship, a detailed Action Plan will be developed in accordance with the PF. Based on site visits to potential community conservation areas, the restrictions on existing uses of land is expected to be minor and can be managed with addition of specialist staff, overseen by SANBI. Based on available information, it is not expected that these restrictions would potentially affect informal users, tenants and workers, nor displacing informal or illegal activities to other nearby areas.

6.4.6 Risks to Cultural Heritage

Based on information currently available, ESS8 is not currently relevant, as the project is not likely to have impacts on or have risks associated with cultural heritage, tangible as well as intangible. Activities will be identified through participatory procedures which
should include deliberate screening of tangible and intangible heritage. Possible impacts on Cultural Heritage will be further assessed and the applicability of the ESS will be determined during the environmental and social screening described in ESS1. However, any potential construction contracts must include Chance Find Procedures, which have been detailed in the ESMF, which details steps to be followed in case cultural property sites are encountered during construction.

6.4.7 Nonrealization of tangible benefits by communities living around PA

Nonrealization of tangible benefits by communities living around PA, particularly in the three targeted nodes, will pose expectation management challenge to the project. Many of the communities living around these PAs have realized limited value from the land claims process to date and are struggling to diversify existing livelihoods options through rights obtained through the land restitution process. The creation of many protected areas in South Africa has often resulted in the forcible removal of communities from their land and resources. In the post-apartheid South Africa, the national government has implemented a land restitution program that allows dispossessed communities to re-claim the land they were forcefully removed from. Once successful, the applicants either obtain land ownership or user rights based on the fundamental principle that the land will still stay under a conservation and tourism land use. Although the land reform process linked to PAs meets national imperatives as well as local and community development priorities, progress has been very slow. Some of the reasons for the lack of effective implementation include the slow process for the settlement and transfer of properties, slow pace of concluding co-management agreements partly due to lack of clear and viable financing models, poor alignment of co-management with government developmental programs, and lack of tangible benefits and in turn lack of broad community beneficiation. This has resulted in many of the communities living around PAs receiving limited value from the land claims process to date and may pose a risk to the project in terms of managing expectations and gaining a social license to operate within PAs.

6.5 Environmental and Social Management Process

This ESMF contains potential mitigation measures and monitoring indicators (see tables below) through which the adverse impacts for specific sub project investments may be managed. However, each sub project investment will have to prepare Environmental and Social Management Plan which should at a very minimum contain, among others:

- Description of planned project activities, and how and when they will be implemented;
- Description of the possible adverse effects that the ESMP is intended to address;
- Identification of project design alternatives that would meet similar objectives, and a description of why these projects are not viable, especially if they have a lesser environmental or social impact;
- Description of planned mitigation measures, and how and when they will be implemented;
- Program for monitoring the environmental and social impacts of the project, both positive and negative;
- Description of who will be responsible for implementing the ESMP; and
• Cost estimate and source of funds.

6.5.1 **Recommended mitigation measures**
The mitigation measures or guidelines have been designed in order to avoid, minimize and reduce negative environmental and social impacts at the project level. The mitigation measures are presented in the following tables in a descriptive format.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact issue</th>
<th>Proposed Action/ Measures</th>
<th>Implementation tool/criteria</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Inputs)</th>
<th>Monitoring Indicators (Outcomes)</th>
<th>Verification</th>
<th>Project stage</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solid waste disposal</td>
<td>Provide adequate waste reception facilities at construction camp sites</td>
<td>Waste management plan/ Construction site management plan</td>
<td>Number of waste bins on site</td>
<td>Percentage of workers who follow the solid waste disposal plan including use of receptacles</td>
<td>Weekly checks by project engineer</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dispose of waste at approved waste collection sites</td>
<td></td>
<td>Training of workers</td>
<td>Number of workers familiar and aware of the waste disposal plan at the construction sites</td>
<td></td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waste oil/fuel disposal</td>
<td>Provide drums/containers for temporary storage on site of waste oil from equipment and vehicles.</td>
<td>Waste management plan/Construction site management plan</td>
<td>Number of waste disposal plan (waste oil)</td>
<td>Number of workers familiar and aware of the waste disposal plan</td>
<td>Monthly checks by project engineer</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dispose of waste oil through an approved agent</td>
<td></td>
<td>Percentage of workers who follow the solid waste disposal plan</td>
<td>Percentage of workers who follow the waste disposal plan including use of receptacles</td>
<td></td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air pollution</td>
<td>Operate well maintained vehicles, trucks and other equipment</td>
<td>Routine maintenance plan for machinery</td>
<td>Number of sound machinery and equipment purchased</td>
<td>Percentage of workers following the good practices for equipment and machinery maintenance</td>
<td>Independent check by project engineers</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor/Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use good quality fuel and lubricants</td>
<td>Purchase of fuel at recognized stations</td>
<td>Availability of equipment and machinery maintenance plan</td>
<td>Verification of maintenance record by project engineers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suppress dust generation at project sites</td>
<td>Schedule of works is to limit</td>
<td>Frequency of watering of surfaces to reduce dust related impacts</td>
<td>Self-check by contractor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Switch off engines when not in use</td>
<td>Water surfaces several times a day to reduce dust at the site.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise pollution</td>
<td>Schedule of works is to be limited to daylight hours</td>
<td>Part of contract agreement for the contractors</td>
<td>Recorded grievances</td>
<td>Number of workers correctly and frequently using PPEs</td>
<td>Self-check by contractor</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Compliance with the national emission levels/standard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of PPE procured for noise mitigation</td>
<td>Number of workers aware of the emissions standards of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4: Proposed mitigation measures

Table 5: Project monitoring indicators and responsibilities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact issue</th>
<th>Proposed Action/ Measures</th>
<th>Implementation tool/criteria</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Inputs)</th>
<th>Monitoring Indicators (Outcomes)</th>
<th>Verification</th>
<th>Project stage</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Impacts on landscape | Provision of PPE for workers for noise pollution  
Train workers on the use of PPEs for noise mitigation and reprimand those not complying |                                                                                               | NEMA and complying with the same                                                             |                                                                                              |                                       |               |                                          |
|                   | When necessary, undertake a Visual Impact Assessment to assess impact of infrastructure on landscape features and sense of place  
Landscaping of facilities after construction, and restoration of disturbed areas | Visual Impact Assessment (VIA)  
Construction site maintenance and restoration plan. |                                                                                               |                                                                                              | Environmental Control Officer  
Self-check by contractor |                                       |               | Private Sector Investor  
Environmental Assessment Practitioner  
Contractor /Project engineer  
SANParks  
isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority  
ECPTA  
LEDET |
| Traffic impacts   | When necessary, undertake a Traffic Impact Assessment to assess impact of increased traffic  
Use only road worthy vehicles and trucks  
Use experienced drivers | Traffic Impact Assessment  
Purchase sound vehicles and trucks /machinery for project  
Traffic incidence records  
Grievances Recorded | Number of drivers aware and familiar with the traffic safety plan  
Percentage of drivers who have not committed a traffic offence for the last 6 months  
Number of compliance (traffic) inspection and | Project engineers to verify  
Environmental Control Officer |                                       | Construction  
Operation | Private Sector Investor  
Environmental Assessment Practitioner |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact issue</th>
<th>Proposed Action/Measures</th>
<th>Implementation tool/criteria</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Inputs)</th>
<th>Monitoring Indicators (Outcomes)</th>
<th>Verification</th>
<th>Project stage</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors must provide driver training</td>
<td>Drivers qualification recorded</td>
<td>Traffic Safety Plan</td>
<td>checks conducted by traffic department found to be satisfactory</td>
<td>Daily self checks by contractors</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Establish speed limits, Enforce safe driving and take disciplinary action against repeat offenders.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Periodic reports on performance by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact issue</td>
<td>Proposed Action/Measures</td>
<td>Implementation tool/criteria</td>
<td>Monitoring indicators (Inputs)</td>
<td>Monitoring Indicators (Outcomes)</td>
<td>Verification</td>
<td>Project stage</td>
<td>Responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact on fauna and flora</td>
<td>Avoid access to sensitive habitat. Avoid protected areas, critical habitats or areas with significant biodiversity (wetlands) Regular inspection or monitoring should be carried out in sensitive areas e.g. swamps/wetlands the area prior to start of work. Ensure proper storage and handling of potentially hazardous materials (including oil).</td>
<td>If a sensitive habitat is discovered in the work area or vicinity, Project activities should cease. The contractor should notify project engineers who will consult SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, ECPTA and LEDET. Hazardous material management plan/accident management plan. Awareness raising among contractor personnel</td>
<td>Number of complaints on pollution of water</td>
<td>Wildlife incidents recorded and reported to SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, ECPTA and LEDET.</td>
<td>Number or percentage of terrestrial flora and fauna unaffected by the sub projects</td>
<td>Regular self-checks by contractor</td>
<td>Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Number of workers aware and sensitized on the need to conserve the flora and fauna</td>
<td>Spot checks and audit by contractor to the client</td>
<td>Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Impact on terrestrial flora and fauna</td>
<td>Environmental Control Officer</td>
<td>Maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impacts on cultural heritage/archaeological interest/existing</td>
<td>Inform contractor and train workers on chance finds Identify cultural heritage resources and existing Pre-construction surveys / Chance finds procedure</td>
<td>Cultural/ archaeological resources/ existing infrastructure encounter incidence register</td>
<td>Number of workers familiar with the chance find procedures</td>
<td>Chance finds procedure under implementation</td>
<td>Preconstruction and construction and repairs/recovery</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4: Proposed mitigation measures
Table 5: Project monitoring indicators and responsibilities
### Table 4: Proposed mitigation measures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact issue</th>
<th>Proposed Action/Measures</th>
<th>Implementation tool/criteria</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Inputs)</th>
<th>Monitoring Indicators (Outcomes)</th>
<th>Verification</th>
<th>Project stage</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aquatic infrastructure and services</td>
<td>ecologically sensitive areas.</td>
<td>Plan for accidental Cultural Finds</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Environmental Assessment Practitioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contractor /Project engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SANParks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LEDET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impact issue</td>
<td>Proposed Action/ Measures</td>
<td>Implementation tool/criteria</td>
<td>Monitoring indicators (Input)</td>
<td>Monitoring indicators (Output)</td>
<td>Verification</td>
<td>Project stage</td>
<td>Responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impacts on recreation and public areas</td>
<td>Place notices and warning signs at working areas</td>
<td>ESMP</td>
<td>Grievance records</td>
<td>Recreational Facilities and areas restored/protected</td>
<td>Warning signs/notices in place</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contractors/Project engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impacts on Human Health/ Safety and Sanitation</td>
<td>Cover buckets of trucks carrying construction materials such as sand, quarry dust, etc. Use road worthy vehicles/trucks and experienced drivers/operators Active construction areas to be marked with high-visibility tape Backfill and or secure open trenches and excavated areas. Provide adequate sanitary facilities Provide PPEs for construction workers. Educate construction workers on site rules/regulation and hygiene and disease (HIV/AIDS) prevention.</td>
<td>ESMP</td>
<td>Health and safety incident register Grievance records</td>
<td>Reduced accidents and hazards in construction sites Reduced incidence of diseases spread e.g. HIV/AIDS, and other STDs Increased understanding of workers on measures to reduce STDs/HIV/AIDS etc.</td>
<td>Health and safety plan under implementation Daily self-checks and verification by contractor Spot checks by project engineers Periodic reports by contractor to project engineers</td>
<td>Construction</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contractors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labour related impacts (Employment)</td>
<td>Ensure that the local communities are given preferred employment opportunities employment and provided with training (skilled) to provide future labour in the project e.g. operation and maintenance</td>
<td>Human Resource Management Plan</td>
<td>Number of local residents employed in sub projects</td>
<td>Number of local residents employed in sub projects</td>
<td>Employment Records</td>
<td>Pre-construction and construction, and repairs/recovery</td>
<td>Private Sector Investor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contractors/EA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 6: Project monitoring indicators and responsibilities—Social Impacts**
### Table 6: Project monitoring indicators and responsibilities-Social Impacts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impact issue</th>
<th>Proposed Action/ Measures</th>
<th>Implementation tool/criteria</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Input)</th>
<th>Monitoring indicators (Output)</th>
<th>Verification</th>
<th>Project stage</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restriction of access to resources/livelihoods</td>
<td>Minimize the impact through participatory planning of community conservation areas. As an integral part of project design, design and budget for alternative measures, in accordance with PF.</td>
<td>Process Framework</td>
<td>(PF)</td>
<td>Change in livelihoods, income for households impacted</td>
<td>Audit of impact</td>
<td>Pre-declaration of community protection agreements</td>
<td>SANBI, implementing agency</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.6 Monitoring Roles and Responsibilities

6.6.1 Monitoring of Environmental and Social Indicators

The goal of monitoring is to measure the success rate of the project, determine whether interventions have resulted in dealing with negative impacts, whether further interventions are needed, or monitoring is to be extended in some areas. Monitoring indicators will be very much dependent on specific project contexts.

6.6.2 Project Level Monitoring

The Project Sub-Executing Agencies will be responsible for monitoring and reporting on compliance with the ESMF. The Sub-Executing Agencies will ensure that sub projects investments are screened, their safeguard instruments prepared, cleared and disclosed prior to sub project approval. Further, the Sub-Executing Agencies will ensure that private sector investors and contractors implement the specific sub project ESMP and submit reports on ESMP implementation as required.

Within the Sub-Executing Agencies, monitoring and surveillance of all the sub project investments will be undertaken by the relevant implementation units to be established for the project which will have technical experts including environmental and social safeguards.

6.6.3 Environment Licensing Authorities

The National Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) or provincial environmental departments of the Eastern Cape and Limpopo Provinces will as the case may be and as required by the NEMA, also undertake environmental and social monitoring based on the environmental and social management plans submitted as part of the licensed ESIA reports. Environmental authorisation, whether it is a Basic Assessment or Scoping and Impact Assessment (IA), will be issued by the following competent authorities:

- National Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (DEFF) – for listed activities in National Parks or World Heritage Sites (Addo Elephant and Kruger National Parks, and iSimangaliso Wetland Park);
- Eastern Cape Department Finance, Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism - for listed activities in and around the Great Fish Nature Reserve, and in areas adjacent to Addo Elephant National Parks;
- KwaZulu Department of Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs - for listed activities in areas adjacent to iSimangaliso Wetland Park; and
- Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism - for listed activities in areas adjacent to Kruger National Park.
- National Department of Employment and Labour, Eastern Cape, Limpopo and KwaZulu Natal Departments of Social Development for labour issues.
7 PROJECT REVIEW, COORDINATION & IMPLEMENTATION ARRANGEMENTS

7.1 IMPLEMENTATION STRUCTURE

7.1.1 Institutional Structure

The Project Management Unit (PMU) will be hosted by the Chief Directorate: Biodiversity Economy and Sustainable Use (BESU) of DEFF in Pretoria. Three Sub-Executing Agencies – South African National Parks (SANParks), South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) and iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority – will be responsible for Component 1. The national level activities, forming Component 2 of the project, will be implemented by SANBI, which will also oversee work in the Eastern Cape project node on community stewardship and livelihoods, to be undertaken by the provincial conservation authority, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency (ECPTA). The Project Node Coordinator will be contracted by SANParks and will be based at the Port Elizabeth office of SANParks, but will service the entire node, including areas where ECPTA is working with local communities around the Great Fish River Nature Reserve, and conducting stewardship outreach in the surrounding landscape. In the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node, activities will be carried out by the Kruger National Park (through SANParks) in the project node, guided by the wider Greater Kruger Strategic Development Programme (GKSDP), and in partnership with a wide range of government agencies, civil society and private sector partners, including traditional authorities and the Limpopo Economic Development, Environment and Tourism (LEDET) department of provincial government. The Project Node Coordinator will be contracted by SANParks and based at the Phalaborwa office of SANParks. In the Greater iSimangaliso Node, activities will be carried out by the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority in the buffer of the park and the node area in the northern half of the Park, in partnership with a wide range of stakeholders, including traditional authorities, local government, private tourism operators and the provincial conservation authority, Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife (EKZNW).

A Project Oversight Committee (POC) will be chaired by and under the directorship of DEFF and will include representation from other government departments and key stakeholders, including co-financing agencies, and representatives of the private sector and civil society.

The PMU will liaise closely with the node coordinators, based at SANParks Eastern Cape Regional Office in Port Elizabeth, SANParks Office in Skukuza, and iSimangaliso Wetland Park office in St Lucia. A full-time environmental and social (E&S) Safeguards Officer in the PMU will support the Project Node Coordinators to manage E&S risks. The PMU will coordinate project implementation and overseen by a multi-stakeholder project steering committee, under the directorship of DEFF. The committee will include key government departments and stakeholders. As part of the PMU, DEFF will engage a dedicated environmental
and social specialist to oversee the due diligence of implementation of the ESMF, PF and SEP and oversee the environmental and social due diligence.

The Node Coordinators will be responsible for activities such as organizing, holding, recording and disseminating the results of platform meetings or events, and facilitating targeted dialogue sessions, for example, for intergovernmental coordination in the landscape, or between communities, conservation agencies and potential investors. The coordinator will also work with the PMU and the hosting agency on communications, awareness and advocacy at node level, using a wide range of available media and approaches – including local radio, mobile phone applications and messaging services, and community theatre. The coordinator will rely on existing staff within the respective organizations (SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, and SANBI) to conduct initial E&S scoping and screening of activities. Where site-specific mitigation plans are required, associated costs will be an integral part of the activity budget. However, where stewardship agreements will be supported the node coordinator will be required to hire specialists to implement the PF requirements.

7.1.2 Institutional Capacity

SANParks is a public entity under the jurisdiction of the Department of Environmental Affairs and the leading conservation authority in all national parks in South Africa. It manages a system of 19 national parks in seven of the nine provinces of South Africa with a total area of just over four million hectares comprising 67% of the protected areas under state management and is recognized as a world leader in conservation and protected area management. SANParks is implementing a number of programmes promoting access and benefit sharing, socio-economic development and improved living conditions for local communities living around the national parks. SANParks has significant capacity in managing the environmental and social impacts of its activities to meet requirements of national law and international good practice.

The iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority has strong capacity for addressing environmental and social risks and impacts of projects consistent with the South Africa National Environmental Management Act. This includes implementation capacity, a proven track record for high quality environment work at both the strategic and project-specific level, and enforcement at the Park level. The national environmental regulatory framework applicable to the iSimangaliso Wetland Park is sound, well designed and adequately enforced. The iSimangaliso Authority is subject to institutional oversight and monitoring by DEFF.

SANBI is a public institution established in September 2004 under the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act No 10 of 2004). The mandate of SANBI is to play a leading role in South Africa’s national commitment to biodiversity management, and it is tasked to lead the country’s biodiversity research agenda, in partnership with the Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries. SANBI also contributes to the key government priority of eradicating poverty through by creating sustainable employment opportunities. SANBI provides
guidance and implementation support related to establishment of conservation stewardship areas, procedures that are comparative to ESS5 requirements. SANBI will therefore provide support in all nodes related to the implementation of the Project’s Process Framework, as relevant.

Only Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority has implemented GEF projects in the past and none of the agencies have experience with the World Bank Environmental and Social Framework (ESF). An assessment of institutional capacity has been included in the ESMF and a subsequent training plan will be developed to strengthen any identified capacity gaps.

7.2 Sub Project Investment Review
The assessment process, whether it is a Basic Assessment (BA) or Scoping and Impact Assessment (IA). This will be done through preparation of an application form (in the case of scoping and EIA) or a notification form (in the case of Basic Assessment) for submission to the competent authority for the specific sub project investment. Each investment will need to be reviewed independently for potential environmental and social impacts. This will ensure that environmental sound design including proposed mitigation measures as well as alternatives are incorporated in the feasibility reports at the design stage hence avoiding design change at an advanced stage.

7.2.1 Project Screening
In South Africa a formal screening process consists of identifying activities that must be subjected to EIA in terms of Section 24(2) of NEMA. As such, no one may commence with an activity listed in the Listing Notices (Listing Notices 1, 2 and 3 (Government Notices No. R.983, R.984, R.985 of 4 December 2014 refer) without first subjecting it to an EIA process for obtaining environmental authorization. The level of assessment (either Basic Assessment or Scoping and Environmental Reporting) has also been prescribed in each Listing Notice. Therefore, there is no discretion for a competent authority to exempt someone from having to subject a listed activity to EIA for obtaining environmental authorization. However, there is some discretion that allows the relevant competent authority to consider granting exemption from some procedural steps that must be followed.

In South Africa, the constituent activities of a project and its alternatives are screened, firstly, to see whether they are listed in terms of legislation and, secondly, if listed, whether they exceed specified thresholds for an activity or not. In other words, an EIA is not required if an activity is not listed or, if listed, does not exceed the specified threshold. In addition to the three Listing Notices published in terms of NEMA, the list of waste management activities under the Waste Act with thresholds was amended in November 2013 in Government Notice 921; as well as a list of activities which require an atmospheric emission license in terms of the Air Quality Act was promulgated in March 2010 in Government Notice 248. None of these activities may commence without the relevant environmental authorization from the relevant competent/licensing authority that may either be the national Department of Environmental Affairs or provincial environmental departments, or - in the case of atmospheric emission licenses - a metropolitan or district municipality.
The World Bank also requires that sub project investments are screened in order to decide as to whether a full scale ESIA, a standalone ESMP or no further environmental or social studies are needed for investments. In order to blend the requirements of the Bank and that of South Africa, the screening will be done and submitted to the Bank as well as to the relevant licensing authority in South Africa. Basic Assessment Report and EMPR

The Basic Assessment Report (BAR) must be made available to and potential or registered interested and affected parties including State departments that administer laws relating to the environment. The BAR will then be revised to include all responses to the comments received during the commenting period. Minimum requirements for public participation are prescribed by Regulations 39 to 44 in the EIA Regulations and Section 24 (4) (a) (v) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998).

7.2.2 Scoping Report

The Scoping Report must be made available to potential or registered interested and affected parties including State departments that administer laws relating to the environment. The Scoping Report will then be revised to include all responses to the comments received during the commenting period. Minimum requirements for public participation are prescribed by Regulations 39 to 44 in the EIA Regulations and Section 24 (4) (a) (v) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998). To register, the person must either be an organ of state, request to be placed on the register by the environmental assessment practitioner (EAP), or submit comments, or attend a meeting with the EAP and applicant. The report will be made available for comment to all State departments that administer laws relating to the environment for comment. The revised report will include all responses to what was presented in the previous report. In terms of Section 22(b) of the EIA Regulations, environmental authorization may be refused after consideration of the Scoping Report if:

- The proposed activity is in conflict with a prohibition contained in legislation; or
- The Scoping Report does not substantially comply with the content requirements of the Regulations, and the applicant is unwilling or unable to ensure compliance with these requirements within the prescribed timeframe.

7.2.3 Investigation and Assessment

The Environmental Impact Report (EIR) includes a draft environmental management programme (EMPr) and Specialist reports that generate new knowledge in order to address key issues in a particular field, for example, an atmospheric emissions study that uses dispersion models to determine the extent of emissions and likely spread of air pollutants. The EIR and Specialist reports are made available for comment to all registered interested and affected parties, including all State departments that administer laws relating to the environment. The revised EIR and Specialist reports will be updated to take into account any comments from interested and affected parties.

7.2.4 Commencement of Screening

The requirement to obtain environmental authorization for certain development proposals or projects is legislated in NEMA. The EIA Regulations make provision for two types or
levels of assessment, namely Basic Assessment and Scoping and EIA. The EIA regulations specify that:

- All activities that appear in Listing Notice 1 (GN No. R. 386 of 21 April 2006) require a Basic Assessment;
- All activities that appear in Listing Notice 2 (GN No. R. 387 of 21 April 2006) are subject to scoping and EIA; and
- Where an application involves activities from both Listing Notices, scoping and EIA must be undertaken.

Furthermore, the EIA regulations make provision for an application to also be subjected to the scoping and EIA process on the basis of the results of the Basic Assessment. If an applicant intends to undertake an activity to which basic assessment must be applied and based on the advice of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) is of the view that is unlikely that the competent authority will be able to reach a decision based on the information contained in the basic assessment report, the applicant may apply for permission to apply scoping instead of basic assessment to the application.

Screening of investments will commence right at the project inception phase as soon as the specific sub project details are known including nature and scope, proposed location and area among other parameters. Screening is expected to happen concurrently with the project specific feasibility studies so that any potential impacts identified through screening are immediately incorporated into the feasibility study hence ensuring that environmental sound design of the sub projects occurs right at the project design phase.

The screening process could result in any of the following determination; -

1. Basic Assessment Report
2. Scoping and EIA,

7.2.5 Who Prepares Screening Form
An applicant for environmental authorization of an activity must appoint an Environmental Assessment Practitioner (“EAP”) to manage the application on his/her behalf. The EAP must determine which process to follow, that is, whether Basic Assessment or Scoping and EIR. The project will a qualified EAP who will be tasked to prepare either Basic Assessment or Scoping and Environmental Reporting. It is important to bear in mind that while the project proponent is the person who intends to submit an application and in whose name the application is made, it is the EAP who will manage the content and process of the application. He or she will be appointed by the Applicant before an application is made.

7.2.6 Authority Review and Decision Making
The Competent Authority will decide either to grant or refuse environmental authorization. This decision is subject to appeal. While there is no distinct public participation phase undertaken during the authority review and decision-making stage, the comments received during all the other stages of the EIA process must be considered by the authority during the authority review and decision-making stage. The approval or refusal may be in whole or in part, that is, only part of what was applied for is approved. An application may also be approved with conditions that the applicant must comply with. Should it grant environmental authorization, the environmental authorization will include the following:
• Approval of the proposed project or an alternative because: — It meets legal requirements. — It meets the general purpose better than the other alternatives. — It is the best practicable environmental option, in that it is the feasible option that best avoids and/or mitigates negative impacts, while best enhancing positive impacts;

• Reasons and reasoning to show that:
  o All potentially adverse and beneficial environmental impacts were fully considered. — The benefits assessed outweigh adverse environmental impacts. — Implementation of the proposed project or an alternative will be socially, economically and environmentally acceptable. — Measures to address mitigation and statements on further responsibilities in an EMPr.

### 7.2.7 Public Review of the ESIA Report

Public participation Section 23(2)(d) of NEMA calls for “adequate and appropriate opportunity for public participation in decisions that may affect the environment”. One of the NEMA principles in Section 2(4)(f) is that “the participation of all interested and affected parties [I&APs] in environmental governance must be promoted”. These I&APs must be afforded an opportunity to participate throughout the assessment process. Any applications for exemption must also be clearly communicated to I&APs that includes relevant organs of State, such as SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, South African Heritage Resources Agency. Regulation 43(1) states that registered I&APs are entitled to comment on all written submissions made to the competent authority, and to bring to its attention any issues which they believe may be of significance to the consideration of the application, on condition that they disclose any direct business, financial, personal or other interest which they may have in the approval or refusal of the application. Appropriate participation measures should be put in place to deal with the range of cultural and language requirements of I&APs. The language used by I&APs must be taken into account when serving a notice, selecting a newspaper, holding a public meeting and writing a report. Regulations 39 to 44 in the EIA Regulations specify that notices to I&APs must be in the form of a site notice, written notice to different parties, placing advertisements in newspapers, or a combination thereof as agreed to by competent authority. This includes notifying the owner or person in control of land if the applicant is not the owner or person in control of such land.
8 CAPACITY BUILDING, TRAINING AND TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE

8.1 Institutional Capacity for ESMF Implementation

The principal institution that will provide overall coordination including administration of the project will be the PIU at DEFF in order to ensure environmentally sound design and management of proposed project investments.

8.1.1 Project Implementing Agencies

The technical capacity and capability of the institutions that will be implementing the ESMF for the project will require bolstering in order to ensure effective implementation of the environmental and social due diligence requirements. At present, the implementing agencies expected to implement sub projects within require capacity building on the Environmental and Social Framework and Environmental and Social Standards. A capacity needs assessment of the implementing partner institutions on social and environmental evaluation, screening, mitigation and monitoring will be necessary as part of the capacity strengthening program. This ESMF proposes capacity building by way of awareness creation and sensitization, actual training through workshops and seminars as well as short courses.

8.2 Identification of Capacity Needs

The first step in pursuing capacity building will be to identify the capacity needs of the various stakeholders. Capacity building should be viewed as more than training. It is human resource development and includes the process of equipping individuals with the understanding, skills and access to information, knowledge and training that enables them to perform effectively. It also involves organizational development, the elaboration of relevant management structures, processes and procedures, not only within organizations but also the management of relationships between the different organizations and sectors (public, private and community). The capacity building requirements will mostly be in the form of training workshops and seminars.

8.2.1 Technical Capacity Enhancement

Awareness creation, training and sensitization will be required for personnel of the following institutions.

- Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries
- South Africa National Parks
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority
- South African National Biodiversity Institute
- Provincial Government Authorities
- District Government Authorities
- Local Engineering Contractors who will be contracted to undertake the construction works

8.2.2 Training will focus on, but not limited to:

- World Environmental and Social Framework
- World Bank Environmental and Social Standards
- Stakeholder engagement, consultation and partnerships; the World Bank COVID-19 guidelines will be adapted and used, as relevant
- ESIA law, relevant environmental policies;
- Environmental and Social Management Framework
- Development of mitigation measures and Environmental Management Plans
- Community Consultation/Participatory Planning
- Reporting, monitoring and follow-up of ESMF
- Occupational, Health and Safety

### 8.3 ESMF Implementation Budget

The estimated total cost for ESMF implementation and monitoring is provided in Table 7 below

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Responsibility</th>
<th>Total Cost, US$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Awareness creation and capacity building</td>
<td>DEFF PMU and 3 implementing agencies</td>
<td>80,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation and development of Environmental and social instruments</td>
<td>DEFF PMU and 3 implementing agencies</td>
<td>79,440</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring and reporting of ESMF</td>
<td>DEFF PMU and 3 implementing agencies</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>209,440</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9 PUBLIC CONSULTATION AND DISCLOSURE

9.1 ESMF Disclosure
The World Bank Environmental and Social Standards (ESS10) require that this ESMF and
ESIA reports for sub projects are made available to project affected groups, local NGOs,
and the public at large. Public disclosure of ESIA documents is also a requirement of the
Republic of South Africa (RSA) environmental and social procedures. The Project
Implementing Agencies will make available copies of the ESMF and ESIA on the
respective websites and offices.

9.2 Public Consultation during ESMF Preparation
Stakeholder engagement is one of the central concepts of the Project. There has been a
number of meetings and consultations between DEFF and the World Bank, and DEFF and
key stakeholder institutions and communities to discuss project design and locations of key
infrastructures. The level of stakeholder risk for the Project is considered substantial given
the level of in-depth engagement that will be required to ensure benefit sharing
arrangements with communities are fair and social conflicts and tensions are minimized.
High expectations as to what the Protected Areas can deliver may lead to frustration with
project results, including from actors involved in land claims, a sensitive political issue.
Simultaneously, local stakeholders in many instances demonstrate negative perceptions
about protected areas. The Project intends to help conserve natural habitats and wildlife of
global value, while allowing the realization of the economic potential for social
development of these natural assets.

9.2.1 Project Partner meetings

Details about the meetings and consultations held with the government agencies and
other key project partners are presented below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Participants</th>
<th>Key Points Raised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Johannesburg| 24 March 2019| DEA (now DEFF) SANParks iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority SANBI World Bank | GEF 7 Partners meeting – key issues raised included:
<p>|             |             |                                                                             | o What is the larger vision for the project?                                                                                                      |
|             |             |                                                                             | o Will the current GEF 7 project deliver on the expectation that it’s a catalyst for a much bigger biodiversity economy project?                   |
|             |             |                                                                             | o Biodiversity impact of the project                                                                                                              |
|             |             |                                                                             | o Project approach and impact                                                                                                                      |
|             |             |                                                                             | o How do you measure community perceptions?                                                                                                       |
|             |             |                                                                             | o Beneficiaries of the project should include land claimants, as well as outside actors.                                                          |
|             |             |                                                                             | o Definition of Protected Area Landscapes                                                                                                         |
|             |             |                                                                             | o Importance to include Marine Protected Areas as part of the scope of the project                                                             |
| Centurion   | 15 July 2019| DEFF                                                                        | o GEF 7 Project Steering Committee meeting                                                                                                       |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Attendees</th>
<th>Event Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Centurion</td>
<td>15 July 2019</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, World Bank</td>
<td>GEF 7 Pillar 2 Working Group meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Pretoria      | 30 October 2019 | GEF, DEFF, SANParks, SANBI, World Bank, UNEP                        | Planning and integration meeting. Key issues raised included:  
  - Important to keep project focussed and not too complicated  
  - Need to support GWP objectives, results framework and theory of change | Pretoria 11 December 2019 | DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, World Bank                  | GEF 7 Project Steering Committee meeting |
| Pretoria      | 11 December 2019 | DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, World Bank    | GEF 7 Project Finance Task Team meeting                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Pretoria, Addo Elephant National Park, Greater Fish Game Reserve, iSimangaliso Wetland Park, and Kruger National Park | 27 January 2020 to 7 February 2020 | DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, World Bank, IFC | GEF 7 Mission  
  - Discussion of GEF 7 Mission Objectives  
  - Project overall vision, design, and activities (PDO, components structure, results framework, activities, partners envisaged)  
  - WBG Processing Guidelines: Budget, Safeguards, Fiduciary and Procurement, other Implementation Agreements |
  - Discussion of GEF 7 Mission Objectives  
  - Project overall vision, design, and activities (PDO, components structure, results framework, activities, partners envisaged)  
  - WBG Processing Guidelines: Budget, Safeguards, Fiduciary and Procurement, other Implementation Agreements |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Participants</th>
<th>Meetings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Background to the GEF 7 project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Theory of Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Presentation on Pilot Nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Discussion of key project themes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Biodiversity Economy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Small Enterprise Incubation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Biodiversity Finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Spatial Planning and GIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Gender and Social Inclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Stakeholder Consultation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Community Facilitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Institutionalizing practices/enabling arrangements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addo</td>
<td>31 January 2020</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, World Bank</td>
<td>○ Importance of looking at the potential of linking protected area expansion initiatives to land reform programme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elephant National Park</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Partnerships key in supporting conservation agencies to achieve their socio-economic development objectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Assessment and finalisation of proposed scope of work for Eastern Cape Node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kosi Bay, iSimangaliso</td>
<td>2 February 2020</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI</td>
<td>○ Overview of iSimangaliso Wetland Park landscape and summary of key programmes and priorities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wetland Park</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Outline of key interventions and proposed projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phalaborwa, Kruger</td>
<td>7 February 2020</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, Limpopo Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism World Bank</td>
<td>○ Discussion of possible GEF 7 components for the Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>National Park</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Proposed projects / interventions need to be aligned to Greater Kruger Strategic Development Plan development process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>○ Opportunity to develop a landscape level wildlife economy master plan for a greater community-owned area adjacent to Kruger National Park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretoria</td>
<td>4 March 2020</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, World Bank</td>
<td>○ GEF 7 Project Steering Committee meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretoria</td>
<td>4 March 2020</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, World Bank, IFC</td>
<td>○ GEF 7 Project Finance Task Team meeting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Broader Stakeholder and Local Community / Project Beneficiaries meetings
Details about the meetings and consultations held with the key stakeholders and local communities / project beneficiaries are presented below.
### Table 9. Logistical Information of Broader Stakeholder and Local Community / Project Beneficiaries Meetings and Consultations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Participants</th>
<th>Key Points Raised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| St Lucia, iSimangaliso Wetland Park | 10 February 2019     | iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, Local tourism operators, World Bank      | o Need for the Park to function as catalyst for poverty reduction, community development within the broader landscape  
   o Need for conservation strategies that generate benefits for communities and equity                                                                                                                     |
| Mbazwana, iSimangaliso Wetland Park | 11 February 2019     | iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, Local SMMEs / small businesses rural enterprises supported by iSimangaliso’s Rural Enterprise Accelerator Program, World Bank | o Innovative models and approaches to conservation management & rural development currently being implemented  
   o Need for access to finance, business development support and skills development  
   o Market access to support tourism enterprises key to sustainability                                                                                                                                         |
| Johannesburg                  | 25 June 2019          | DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, National Department of Tourism, WWF-SA, Tourism Conservation Fund, Vumelana Advisory Fund, Raizcorp, Investec, Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT), Conservation South Africa (CSA), Meat Naturally, Tourvest, Airbnb, Anglo American, World Bank | o Round Table to discuss Biodiversity Economy and Inclusive Business around Protected Areas in South Africa. Key issues raised included:  
   o Partnerships - Socio-economic mandate is enormous and cannot be done by Protected Area Agencies alone. A common vision is needed, as well as Forums for coordination.  
   o Local government’s role should be stressed.  
   o Policies – there is a need for Government to take actions to create an enabling business environment (facilitating licensing), and to ensure businesses are sustainable (respect natural resources, carrying capacity) and inclusive, particularly of local communities. We saw examples from DEFF and DoT.  
   o Market-based solutions can play a role in generating incentives for biodiversity conservation.  
   o Premium price or market access for goods from sustainable management, such as sustainable meat, fisheries and tourism.  
   o Partnerships between private sector and local communities as a possibility to attract private financing and technical knowledge.  
   o Resource ownership by local communities is a pre-condition for engagement in businesses.  
   o Land access and land reform within and around protected areas should be a key focus area.  
   o Biodiversity / conservation increases value of land which can benefit local and traditional landowners.  
   o Commitment from communities is needed to ensure sustainability – example of conservation agreements.                                                                                                  |
Environmental and Social Management Framework - ESMF

- PAs – tourism and conservation is not going to generate all needed jobs.
- Skills and technology issues are prevalent: limited human skills and brain drain from rural areas reduce opportunities for enterprise development and employment.
- Skills enhancement requires long-term, sustained efforts on all fronts.
- Technology can open new businesses (mobile abattoirs, apps for sustainable fisheries management, Airbnb) but again requires skills.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Partnering Organizations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Namibia</td>
<td>14-18 October 2020</td>
<td>DEFF SANParks iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority SANBI People and Parks Programme People and Parks Youth Programme</td>
<td>South-South-Knowledge-Exchange visit to the Zambezi Region of Namibia was undertaken from 14 to 18 October 2019. The purpose of this visit was for GEF 7 Partners to learn from the Namibia Community Conservancy Programme, and identify areas and components that may be relevant to the design of the Biodiversity Economy component (Pillar 2) of the project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater Fish Nature Reserve</td>
<td>5 December 2019</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency (ECPTA) Brakfontein Communal Property Association</td>
<td>General discussions about developments and opportunities for Brakfontein game farm. ECPTA indicated that it is attempting to leverage resource for Brakfontein and Double Drift through the GEF7 process. The rationale of GEF7 Pillar 2 was explained and it was communicated that there seems to be an opportunity for support via GEF7. It was resolved that ECPTA can continue to investigate the GEF7 opportunity for Brakfontein as it aligns with the vision that the community has for the region.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater Fish Nature Reserve</td>
<td>20 January 2020</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency (ECPTA) Brakfontein Communal Property Association</td>
<td>Provided feedback on GEF7 developments, including copy of the proposal submitted and to verify that the content is in line with the vision of the community. The draft presentation to be made at the upcoming GEF 7 meeting in Pretoria was discussed the site visit. Attendees worked through the proposal and the draft presentation. The delegated CPA representatives confirmed that the proposal and the presentation reflects the vision of the community accurately. Logistics for the site visit / GEF 7 mission was discussed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addo Elephant National Park</td>
<td>29 January 2020</td>
<td>DEFF SANParks iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority SANBI Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td>Opportunities for community beneficiation from tourism in Addo Elephant National Park. Need to create benefits from conservation for land claim communities. Need for more collaboration and closer working relationship between PA agencies and neighbouring communities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Area</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Stakeholders</td>
<td>Highlights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Wilderness Foundation Africa| Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust | Need for technical and financial support in setting up community-owned enterprises  
Importance of well-structured and capacitated community governance structures |  
Wilderness Foundation Africa  
Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust  
Greater Fish Nature Reserve  
30 January 2020  
DEFF  
SANParks  
iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority  
SANBI  
Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency  
Likhaya Lethu CPA  
People and Parks Programme (Eastern Cape)  
Umhlaba Consulting World Bank  
Kosi Bay, iSimangaliso Wetland Park  
3 February 2020  
DEFF  
SANParks  
iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority  
SANBI  
Local SMMEs / small businesses rural enterprises supported by iSimangaliso’s Rural Enterprise Accelerator Program  
World Bank  
Lake Sibiy, iSimangaliso Wetland Park  
3 February 2020  
DEFF  
SANParks  
iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority  
SANBI  
Mabasa Traditional Leadership / CPA  
Mabasa Community Conservation Area representatives  
World Bank  
Makhasa Community Conservation Area  
4 February 2020  
DEFF  
SANParks  
iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority  
SANBI  
Makhasa CPA  
World Bank  
Overview of current outcomes of the iSimangaliso’s Rural Enterprise Accelerator Program  
Local SMMEs provided feedback on the impact of support generated by the iSimangaliso’s Rural Enterprise Accelerator Program  
Key reasons for success included financial support, training and skills development, and continued business support  
Need to resuscitate the previously constituted Mabasa Community Conservation Area located on the banks of Lake Sibiy,  
Opportunity for the development and implementation of a diverse wildlife economy through game breeding, hunting and tourism development  
Need technical support to develop a reserve master plan, and feasibility studies on the respective land use / wildlife economy models  
Community in the process of investigating options for the development of a viable community-owned tourism business linked to the Makhasa Community Conservation Area  
In the process of upgrading the existing lodge with existing community funds  
Need additional financial support as well as suitable partner to assist with the development of the tourism business |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Participants</th>
<th>Key Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phalaborwa, Kruger Park</td>
<td>5 February</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, Limpopo Department</td>
<td>- Overview of Greater Kruger Park landscape and summary of key programmes and priorities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism, Indalo Inclusive &amp; SEED</td>
<td>- Outline of key interventions and proposed projects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>World Bank</td>
<td>- Outline of current small business development programmes, including skills development and outreach initiatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phalaborwa, Kruger Park</td>
<td>6 February</td>
<td>DEFF, SANParks, iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, SANBI, Limpopo Department</td>
<td>- Need for support to the Mahumane community with the development of wildlife economy master plan for a proposed conservation area on communal land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2020</td>
<td>of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism, Chief Mahumane, Mahumane</td>
<td>- Opportunities to investigate possible linkages with Kruger National Park for land bordering the park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Traditional Authority, World Bank</td>
<td>- Further support needed for intensive agricultural production, including financial and technical support and market access</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.2.2 Grievance Mechanism

Grievance mechanisms provide a formal avenue for affected groups or stakeholders to engage with the project implementers or owners on issues of concern or unaddressed impacts. Grievances are any complaints or suggestions about the way a project is being implemented. They may take the form of specific complaints for damages/injury, concerns about routine project activities, or perceived incidents or impacts or questions about benefits arising from the project. Identifying and responding to grievances supports the development of positive relationships between projects and affected groups/communities, and other stakeholders. Grievances can be an indication of growing stakeholder concerns (real and perceived) and can escalate if not identified and resolved. The management of grievances is therefore a vital component of stakeholder management and an important aspect of risk management for a project. Projects may have a range of potential adverse impacts to people and the environment in general, identifying grievances and ensuring timely resolution is therefore very necessary. The grievance redress mechanism will be set out in more detail in the Stakeholder Engagement Plan.

Besides the overall goal of dialogue and problem solving, the GRM has several secondary objectives, as follows:

1. The GRM will support the project implementation unit to have better and improved project outcomes by resolving related disputes effectively and promptly. The GRM
should serve as a project early warning system and capture grievances that expand into
more complex conflicts, thereby attracting more parties and dealing with a higher
number of issues or expanding of conflict to a larger area.

2. Communities dependent on natural resources and land use can be stimulated to get
more voice in the project through the GRM. The mechanism provides an opportunity
to submit complaints and argue for improved conditions, which is an ultimate goal of
the project. More importantly, communities will have an institutionalized channel to
engage in dialogue with the implementation unit, government, CSOs.

3. The GRM should become the first line of response of the project for PAPs. For
example, they can acquire information about the project through the GRM while of
putting forward a grievance on having limited information about the project. In that
way, communities will have a channel of communication to the project. This is
important as it ensures dissemination of information to the local levels and feedback
from local levels to inform project activities and decision making.

The GRM will be implemented on two levels:

- **National project implementation level:** to the PMU through the current system
  that is being used as part of the implementation of the EIA Regulations, which
  provides for any member of the public to raise concerns directly to DEFF; and

- **Landscape level through the following:**
  1. **Greater iSimangaliso Wetland Park Node** – to the Node Coordinator through
     the systems and processes provided for by the iSimangaliso Wetland Park
     Overarching Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) and People and
     Parks Programme structures; and / or
     - 24 Hour emergency hotline: +27 82 797 7944
     - Office telephone: +27 35 590 1633/1602
     - info@isimangaliso.com
  2. **Greater Addo to Amathole Node:**
     - **Addo Elephant National Park** – to the Node Coordinator through the
       existing Park Forum established to oversee the implementation of the
       Park Management Plan, People and Parks Programme structures or
       Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust; and / or
       - Park Reception: +27 (0) 42 233 8600
     - **Greater Fish Nature Reserve** - to the Node Coordinator through the
       existing Double Drift Co-management Committee established to
       oversee the implementation of the Double Drift Co-Management
       Agreement and People and Parks Programme structures; and / or
       - +27 43 492 0881
       - info@ecpta.co.za
       - Toll free number - 0800 611 085; SMS: 33490
       - ecpta@whistleblowing.co.za
  3. **Greater Kruger-Limpopo Node** - to the Node Coordinator through the
     existing Community Park Forums, Greater Kruger Co-operative Agreement,
     Greater Kruger Strategic Development Plan, and People and Parks Programme
     structures; and / or
At the beginning of the project implementation, the grievance redress committees will be established at national and nodal levels building on the systems set out above, to ensure that a system is in place to help resolve any grievances or complaints that may occur during and after project intervention. This will be reflected in an updated stakeholder engagement plan. The grievance mechanism will be applied to persons or groups that are directly or indirectly affected by a project, as well as those that may have interests in a project and/or have the ability to influence its outcome either positively or negatively. The project will provide training and support to strengthen these existing structures for effectively and collectively dealing with possible grievances that may be raised by PAPs.

The project will ensure in consultations with stakeholders that grievance mechanisms are appropriate and acceptable. The GRM is an essential part of the safeguard instrument to resolve complaints on the project activities. It should address concerns and complaints promptly, using an understandable and transparent process that is gender responsive, culturally appropriate, and readily accessible to all segments of the complainant persons. Generally, the GRM will ensure that (i) the public within project areas is aware of rights to access and shall have access to the mechanism free of administrative and legal charges, and (ii) concerns arising from project activity in all phases are addressed effectively. Such kinds of approach are useful, among others, to improve project outcomes, help to prioritize supervisions, identify systematic implementation issues and trends, and promote accountability through creating more predictable, timely and results-oriented responses to citizen concerns.

Grievances can be submitted by email, written letter, toll-free line, SMS and a suggestion/complaint box placed at the project activities sites and implementation unit branches, as appropriate. Details that will be reflected in the updated Stakeholder Engagement Plan include: (i) How the GRMs at each of the project sites will be made accessible to all population groups, (ii) The Process of acknowledging, resolving and reporting on grievances; including how grievances that may arise relating to sexual exploitation and abuse will be handled. The National level GRM set up in the PMU will set up processes to ensure it is monitoring and reporting on grievances that relate to the process that are being received at the landscape level GRMs. An appeals process will also be set out establishing how disputes that are not resolved at the landscape level will handled.

Support from non-governmental organizations, interest groups and other stakeholders is necessary for helping local land users submit their grievances. Grievances are assessed by subject-experts and project staff possessing substantial knowledge about natural resources management and conflict resolution. In relative difficult cases, an external expert can serve as a mediator in trying to reach agreement between disputing parties. If parties are unable to reach a resolution, they may submit an appeal to the project technical committee to decide on the case. As a last resort, stakeholders can submit a formal complaint through the PMU. The Appeals process will be set out in more detail in an updated SEP.

In addition to the grievance mechanism itself, the project will develop a communication plan to inform the stakeholders about the existence of the GRM and instructions of
operation. The communication plan includes aspects of stakeholder-targeted communication channels, facilitators, multipliers and timelines. This is set out in detail in the Stakeholder Engagement Plan.

The ESMF also includes an Incident Reporting Mechanism (attached in Annex 4) that the project GRM will follow.

9.2.3 Establishment of Grievance Redress Committee
Each sub project investment will have a Grievance Redress Committee (GRC) established for the purpose of handling grievances related to environmental and social concerns. The GRCs will be ad hoc institutions established primarily for the sub project investment and will have no legal mandate.

9.2.4 World Bank’s Grievance Redress
Communities and individuals who believe that they are adversely affected by a World Bank supported project may submit complaints to existing project-level grievance redress mechanisms or the WB’s Grievance Redress Service (GRS). The GRS ensures that complaints received are promptly reviewed in order to address project-related concerns. Project affected communities and individuals may submit their complaint to the WB’s independent Inspection Panel which determines whether harm occurred, or could occur, as a result of WB non-compliance with its policies and procedures. Complaints may be submitted at any time after concerns have been brought directly to the World Bank's attention, and Bank Management has been given an opportunity to respond.

For information on how to submit complaints to the World Bank’s corporate Grievance Redress Service (GRS), please visit http://www.worldbank.org/GRS. For information on how to submit complaints to the World Bank Inspection Panel, please visit www.inspectionpanel.org. It is however recommended that a project level grievance mechanism that has been agreed upon by all stakeholders is put in place early, to avoid small matters snowballing into conflicts that may lead to delayed disbursement and implementation.
Annex 1: Checklist For Screening Of Projects

Project Name:

Project Type:

Location:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Questions considered</th>
<th>Yes/No?</th>
<th>Which Characteristics of the Project Environment could be affected?</th>
<th>Is the effect likely to be significant? Why?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>Will the project involve any actions during construction, operation or decommissioning which would create changes in the locality as a result of the nature, scale, form or purpose of the new development?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Permanent or temporary change in land use, land cover or topography including increases in intensity of land use?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Clearance of existing land, vegetation and buildings?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Creation of new land uses?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Pre-construction investigations e.g. boreholes, soil testing?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Temporary sites used for construction works or housing of construction workers?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>Above ground buildings, structures or earthworks including linear structures, cut and fill or excavations?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>Dredging?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>Facilities for storage of goods or materials?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>Facilities for treatment or disposal of solid wastes or liquid effluents?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>New road, altered routes, traffic during construction or operation?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>Closure or diversion of existing transport routes or infrastructure leading to changes in traffic movements?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>New or diverted transmission lines or pipelines?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>Impoundment, damming, culverting, realignment or other changes to the hydrology of watercourses or aquifers?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>Stream crossings?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>Abstraction or transfers of water from ground or surface waters?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>Changes in water bodies or the land surface affecting drainage or run-off?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>Long term dismantling or decommissioning or restoration works?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>Ongoing activity during decommissioning which could have an impact on the environment?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Questions considered</td>
<td>Yes/No?</td>
<td>Which Characteristics of the Project Environment could be affected?</td>
<td>Is the effect likely to be significant? Why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.19</td>
<td>Influx of people to the area either temporarily or permanently?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>Introduction of alien species?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>Loss of native species or genetic diversity?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>Any other actions?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Will the project use any natural resources, especially any resources which are non-renewable or in short supply?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Land especially undeveloped or agricultural land?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Water?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Minerals?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Aggregates?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Forests and timber?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Energy including electricity and fuels?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Any other resources?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Will the project involve use, storage, transport, handling or production of substances or materials which could be harmful to human health or the environment or raise concerns about actual or perceived risks to human health?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Are there especially vulnerable groups of people who could be affected by the project e.g. hospital patients, the elderly?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Will the project result in changes in occurrence of disease or affect disease vectors (e.g. insect or water borne diseases)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Will the project affect the welfare of people e.g. by changing living conditions?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Any other causes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Will the Project produce solid wastes during construction or operation or decommissioning?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Spoil or overburden?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Municipal waste (household and or commercial wastes)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Hazardous or toxic wastes (including radioactive wastes)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Sewage sludge?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Construction or demolition wastes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>Redundant machinery or equipment?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.7</td>
<td>Contaminated soils or other material?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>Agricultural wastes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>Any other solid wastes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Will the Project release pollutants or any hazardous, toxic or noxious substances to air?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Emissions from combustion of fossil fuels from stationary or mobile sources?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>Emissions from materials handling including storage or transport?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Emissions from construction activities including plant and equipment?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Questions considered</td>
<td>Yes/No/ ?</td>
<td>Which Characteristics of the Project Environment could be affected?</td>
<td>Is the effect likely to be significant? Why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>Dust or odours from handling of materials including construction materials, sewage and waste?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Emissions from any other sources?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>Will the Project cause noise and vibration or release of light, heat energy or electromagnetic radiation?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>From operation of equipment?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>From blasting or piling?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>From construction or operational traffic?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>From lighting or cooling systems?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>From any other sources?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>Will the Project lead to risks of contamination of land or water from releases of pollutants onto the ground or into sewers, surface waters, or groundwater?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>From handling, storage, use or spillage of hazardous or toxic materials?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>From discharge of sewage or other effluents (whether treated or untreated) to water or the land?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>By deposition of pollutants emitted to air, onto the land or into water?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>From any other sources?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>Is there a risk of long term build-up of pollutants in the environment from these sources?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>Will there be any risk of accidents during construction or operation of the Project which could affect human health or the environment?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>From explosions, spillages, fires etc from storage, handling, use or production of hazardous or toxic substances?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>From events beyond the limits of normal environmental protection eg failure of pollution controls systems?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>From any other causes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Could the project be affected by natural disasters causing environmental damage (e.g. floods, earthquakes, landslip, etc)?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>Will the Project result in social changes, for example, in demography, traditional lifestyles, employment?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Changes in population size, age, structure, social groups etc?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>By resettlement of people or demolition of homes or communities or community facilities e.g. schools, hospitals, social facilities?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>Through in-migration of new residents or creation of new communities?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>By placing increased demands on local facilities or services e.g. housing, education, health?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>By creating jobs during project implementation or causing the loss</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Questions considered</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which Characteristics of the Project Environment could be affected?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the effect likely to be significant? Why?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of jobs with effects on unemployment and the economy?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6 Any other causes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**10.0 Question - Are there any other factors which should be considered such as consequential development which could lead to environmental effects or the potential for cumulative impacts with other existing or planned activities in the locality?**

10.1 Will the project lead to pressure for consequential development which could have significant impact on the environment e.g. more housing, new roads, new supporting industries or utilities, etc?

10.2 Will the project lead to development of supporting facilities, ancillary development or development stimulated by the project which could have impact on the environment e.g.:
- supporting infrastructure (roads, power supply, waste or waste water treatment, etc.)
- housing development
- extractive industries
- supply industries other?

10.3 Will the project lead to after-use of the site which could have an impact on the environment?

10.4 Will the project set a precedent for later developments?

10.5 Will the project have cumulative effects due to proximity to other existing or planned projects with similar effects?

If you have answered Yes to any of the above and the effect is likely to be significant, please describe the measures that the project will take to avoid or mitigate environmental and social impacts.

What measures will the project take to ensure that it is technically and financially sustainable?

Note: Attach photographs of before and after to screening.
Annex 2: Generic Terms Of Reference For Preparation Of ESMP

1. Provide a full description of the nature of the project with respect to the name of the proponent, the spatial location of the potential site for the project, the estimated cost of the project, and size of land for the project site, including water reticulation, waste disposal and access roads.

2. Provide a site-specific map of the area (Scale 1:50,000) showing the proposed project site and existing establishments in the area and surrounding areas. A site plan for the project should also be provided. Include the reasons for selecting the proposed site, and any alternative sites considered.

3. Examine the existing conditions of the proposed site identifying and analysing:
   - Geological and soil conditions of the area;
   - The scope of vegetative resources of the area;
   - Existing land uses within the area and within adjacent villages;
   - Ecologically important or sensitive habitats and resources e.g. water resources, biodiversity elements; and
   - Suitability of the site for the proposed development.

4. Describe the major activities to be undertaken for the construction and operation of infrastructure services. This should include the size and type of infrastructure, the type of equipment to be used, the method and duration of construction, nature and quantity of wastes to be generated, the facilities for appropriate disposal and management of waste, number of people to be employed.

5. Provide an account of all statutory and regulatory licenses and approvals obtained for the project to ensure that they are in line with sound environmental management practices and compliance with all relevant existing legislation. Reference should be made, but not limited to the Environment Management Act and other relevant and other relevant legislation.

6. Predict the major short and long-term environmental impact of the project. Examine both the positive and negative impact as well as impact on the biophysical, social, economic and cultural components of the environment.

7. Propose an Environmental and Social Management Plan (ESMP) in tabular form by which all of the mitigation/enhancement measures prescribed will be carried out, specifying who will be responsible for implementing these measures and the schedule for implementation, cost of implementing the measures and the source of funding. An environmental monitoring plan should also be prepared including the indicators to be used for monitoring the impact and responsible persons and institutions that will conduct the monitoring.

8. Undertake public consultations to ensure that all interested and affected parties are involved in and incorporate their views into the ESMP. Evidence of consultation should be provided in the report. This activity should use the SEP prepared under the project.

9. Identify the institutional needs to implement the environmental and social assessment recommendations by reviewing the institutional mandates and capability of implementing institutions at local/district and national levels and recommend steps to strengthen

10. Prepare an Environmental and Social Monitoring Plan; which will include monitoring measures for the Environmental and Social Monitoring Plan including the parameters to be measured, methods to be used, sampling locations, frequency of measurements, and definition of thresholds that will signal the need for corrective actions as well as deliver a monitoring and reporting procedure. The monitoring program would enable verification and would provide a basis for determination of any remedial
measures or adjustments to management aspects if required. This should include a time frame and implementation mechanism, staffing requirements, training and cost outlays.
Annex 3: Template For Environmental & Social Management Plan

The ESMP should be formulated in such a way that it is easy to use. References within the plan should be clearly and readily identifiable. Also, the main text of the ESMP needs to be kept as clear and concise as possible, with detailed information relegated to annexes. The ESMP should identify linkages to other relevant plans relating to the Project, such as plans dealing with resettlement issues. The following aspects should typically be addressed within ESMPs.

**Summary of impacts:** The predicted adverse environmental and social impacts for which mitigation is required should be identified and briefly summarized.

**Description of mitigation measures:** The ESMP identifies feasible and cost-effective measures to reduce potentially significant adverse environmental and social impacts to acceptable levels. Each mitigation measure should be briefly described with reference to the impact to which it relates and the conditions under which it is required (for example, continuously or in the event of contingencies). These should be accompanied by, or referenced to, designs, equipment descriptions, and operating procedures which elaborate on the technical aspects of implementing the various measures. Where the mitigation measures may result in secondary impacts, their significance should be evaluated.

**Description of monitoring program:** Environmental performance monitoring should be designed to ensure that mitigation measures are implemented, have the intended result, and that remedial measures are undertaken if mitigation measures are inadequate or the impacts have been underestimated within the ESIA report. It should also assess compliance with national standards and World Bank Group requirements or guidelines.

The monitoring program should clearly indicate the linkages between impacts identified in the ESIA report, indicators to be measured, methods to be used, sampling locations, frequency of measurements, detection limits (where appropriate), and definition of thresholds that will signal the need for corrective actions, and so forth. Although not essential to have complete details of monitoring in the ESMP, it should describe the means by which final monitoring arrangements will be agreed.

**Institutional arrangements:** Responsibilities for mitigation and monitoring should be clearly defined. The ESMP should identify arrangements for coordination between the various actors responsible for mitigation.

**Budget:** Outline the estimated costs for implementation of the mitigation and monitoring measures.

### A FRAMEWORK ESMP

#### A. Mitigation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project Activity</th>
<th>Potential Environmental and Social Impacts</th>
<th>Proposed Mitigation Measures (Incl. legislation &amp; regulations)</th>
<th>Responsibilities</th>
<th>Cost Estimates</th>
<th>Comments (e.g. secondary impacts)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Construction Phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### B. Monitoring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposed Mitigation Measure</th>
<th>Parameters to be monitored</th>
<th>Location Measurements (incl. methods &amp; equipment)</th>
<th>Frequency of measurement</th>
<th>Responsibilities (Incl. review and reporting)</th>
<th>Cost (equipment &amp; individuals)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Construction Phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction Phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation and Maintenance Phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Cost for all Phases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annex 4: Incident Reporting Form

Incident Reporting: Project-Related

This form is to be used for reporting all incidents, as per commitments in the Environment and Social Commitments Plan (ESCP)

Incidents of child abuse and sexual harassment and severe criminality / social risks and also fatalities or significant incidents that may involve Project staff or are within Project area

These incidents should be documented and brought to attention of MWE for information and determination if further investigation is needed to avoid any possible negative consequences on the Project

The Project should alert the World Bank TTL immediately (within 24 hours of knowledge) in case of severe or serious incidents and fatalities

|   | From: |   |   |   |   | Details of Incidence |   |   |   |   |   |   | Incident No. (month/No) e.g. first fatal in October |   |   |   |   |   | Nature of Incident (e.g. Multiple Fatality) |   |   |   |   |   | Severity of incident |   |   |   |   |   | Who is the victim? |   |   |   |   |   | Name / Occupation of Project staff involved / suspected to be involved? (if known at this stage) |   |   |   |   |   | Date Incident Happened |   |   |   |   |   | Location of Incident |   |   |   |   |   | Date / Time Incident Reported to Contractor / Consultant |   |   |   |   |   | Details of Person(s) Who Reported |   |   |   |   |   | To Whom was incident Reported? |   |   |   |   |   | Mode of Reporting (verbal/written report) – if written attach report. |   |   |   |   |   | Details of the Incident (key facts pertaining to the incident and how it happened) |   |   |   |   |   | Who else was informed about this incident? |   |   |   |   |   | What Action (s) has been taken by Contractor / Consultant to address the problem? And When? |   |   |   |   |   | Details of Actions By MWE |   |   |   |   |   | Name / position of MWE staff incident was reported |   |   |   |   |   | Comments / Recommendations for MWE staff for which Incident was first reported |   |   |   |   |   | 2nd Name/Position / Department for which incident was reported to in MWE Comments / Follow up Action Recommended. |   |   |   |   |   | | |

Indicative Incident

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental</th>
<th>Social</th>
<th>Occupational Health &amp; Safety</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Small-volume hydrocarbon or chemical spills</td>
<td>Small-scale crop damage or livestock deaths</td>
<td>Underuse of personal protective equipment (PPE) by Works Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Localized dust, light, or noise pollution</td>
<td>Grievances due to Project use of public roads</td>
<td>Local increase in the occurrence of communicable disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illegal hunting of wildlife (non-endangered)</td>
<td>Project interference with locally significant practices or sites</td>
<td>Minor job site injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small volume sediment, pesticide, or fertilizer run-off into local waterways</td>
<td>Vehicle damage to public or private roads caused by Works Contractors</td>
<td>Poor “housekeeping” at site, e.g., littering and random disposal of solid waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor off-site disposal of solid waste from Project</td>
<td>Nuisance-level contact between employees and community</td>
<td>Lack of understandable warning or traffic control signage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor quality or delayed site restoration and revegetation</td>
<td>Minor instances of inappropriate behavior of security forces or other Contractor personnel</td>
<td>Almost empty first aid kit at work site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly functioning erosion-control measures</td>
<td>Overloading of local commercial services from use by Project personnel</td>
<td>Poorly organized or sporadic health &amp; safety induction and training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor impacts on livelihood restoration and/or access to community natural resources</td>
<td>Multiple “slip and trip” hazards throughout the site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor impacts on cultural sites/areas</td>
<td>Lack of Health &amp; Safety plan and/or training for staff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minor social conflict related to or affecting the Project</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some problems with consultation/outreach about the Project</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delays by GRM in handling/addressing grievances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Serious Incidents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environmental</th>
<th>Social</th>
<th>Occupational Health &amp; Safety</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Large-volume hydrocarbon or chemical spills, or other hazardous substances impacting the environment</td>
<td>Widespread crop damage or livestock deaths</td>
<td>Injury/ies requiring off-site medical attention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over-exploitation of local natural resources</td>
<td>Cases of mistreatment of communities potentially, including vulnerable groups, by Project workers or security forces, including incidents such as sexual harassment</td>
<td>Instances of serious communicable diseases among workforce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large-volume or long-term sediment, pesticide, or herbicide runoff into waterways</td>
<td>Significant impacts to protected physical cultural resources</td>
<td>Consistent lack of health &amp; safety plans and training at work site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium to large-scale deforestation</td>
<td>Works have commenced without compensation and resettlement being completed</td>
<td>Chronic non-use of PPE at Project work site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of implementation of agreed environmental restoration program</td>
<td>Significant and repeated community impacts from Project vehicles and construction activities</td>
<td>Repeated non-compliance or failure to remedy non-compliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lack of clarity about consultations with Indigenous Peoples and broad community support for the Project</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GRM not functioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inadequate consultation and engagement of stakeholders in the Project leading to significant conflict and/or delays</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Non-violent community protests against the Project, or mild community unrest</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental</td>
<td>Social</td>
<td>Health &amp; Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocarbon or chemical spills, or release of other hazardous substances into the environment, causing widespread impacts, and/or requiring large-scale remediation</td>
<td>Forced evictions or resettlement of communities without due process or compensation</td>
<td>Any fatality Permanent disability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poaching or hunting and trafficking of threatened or endangered species</td>
<td>Abuses of community members (including vulnerable groups e.g., women, children, youth, elderly, disabled/sick, LGBT) by site security forces or other Project workers, including but not limited to GBV</td>
<td>Outbreak of life threatening communicable disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sediment, pesticide, or herbicide runoff causing permanent damage to waterways</td>
<td>Significant damage to nationally protected areas or to UNESCO World Heritage sites</td>
<td>Criminal and political attacks at worksite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Destruction of internationally recognized critical habitat</td>
<td>Human trafficking and child labor</td>
<td>Forced labor by Project’s Works Contractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major river contamination causing decimation of fish population or other aquatic</td>
<td>Violent community protests against the Project</td>
<td>Works Contractor is unresponsive regarding ongoing worksite risks of bodily injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significant impacts on Indigenous Peoples’ land/natural resources and/or culture and there is no evidence of consultation, broad community support, mitigation of harm and/or culturally appropriate benefit-sharing</td>
<td>Persistent non-compliance and/or inability or unwillingness to remedy non-compliance that could result in bodily injury or harm Murders, kidnappings, manslaughter and assaults, while criminal matters and not safeguards incidents per se, have occurred in Bank Projects and should be treated as severe incidents. These incidents would be referred to local authorities with notification to WB Security</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Annex 5 - Chance Find Procedures

The NHRA is the overarching legislation that protects and regulates the management of heritage resources in South Africa, with specific reference to the following Sections:

- General principles for HRM
- Principles for management of heritage resources
- Heritage assessment criteria and grading
- 35. Protection of palaeontological, archaeological and meteorite resources
- 38. Heritage resources management

The Act requires that Heritage Resources Authorities (HRAs), in this case SAHRA and NWPHRA, be notified as early as possible of any developments that may exceed certain minimum thresholds in terms of Section 38(1), or when assessments of impacts on heritage resources are required by other legislation in terms of Section 38(8) of the Act.

If there are Chance finds in the construction sites:

(a) Stop the construction activities in the area of the chance find.
(b) Delineate the discovered site or area.
(c) Secure the site to prevent any damage or loss of removable objects. In cases of removable antiquities or sensitive remains, a night guard shall be present until the responsible authorities take over.
(d) The HRAs shall be responsible for significant movable and immovable cultural, ancient, and natural property and their conservation.
(e) The SAHRA or NWPHRA will out a preliminary evaluation of the findings to be performed and will also be in charge of protecting and preserving the site before deciding on the proper procedures to be carried out. The significance and importance of the findings should be assessed according to the various criteria relevant to cultural heritage, including the aesthetic, historic, scientific or research, social and economic values.
(f) Ensure that decisions on how to handle the findings. This could include changes in the layout (such as when the finding is an irremovable remain of cultural or archaeological importance) conservation, preservation, restoration and salvage.
(g) Construction work will resume only after clearance and authorization is given concerning the safeguard of the heritage.

2. These procedures must be referred to as standard provisions in construction contracts, Safeguards Procedures for Inclusion in the Technical Specifications for Contracts. During project supervision, the supervisor shall monitor the above statute relating to the treatment of any chance find encountered are observed.

3. Relevant findings will be recorded in the Construction Monitoring Report and Implementation Completion Reports will assess the overall effectiveness of the project’s cultural property mitigation, management, and activities, as appropriate.
Annex 6: Negative List

Involuntary land acquisition
- Activities involving involuntary land acquisition

Child Labour
- Activities involving use of child labour

Waste
- Activities involving discharge of untreated wastes and effluents
- Activities involving mining of sands, rocks and other substrata materials

Forests, Natural Habitats and Trees
- Activities likely to cause significant damage to forests, nesting grounds or any other kind of identified / designated natural habitat.
- Activities in forest areas and inside designated Protected Areas
- Any activity that involves cutting of any tree or trees except in accordance with the national regulations
- Activities involving destruction / exploitation of any kind of wildlife.

Physical and cultural resources
- Activities likely to cause damage to objects, sites, structures, groups of structures, and natural features and landscapes that have archaeological, paleontological, historical, architectural, religious, aesthetic, or other cultural significance
- Any subproject involving construction within 200 meter to historical monuments and within 100 meters to railways, highways, etc.

Air, land and water resources
- Activities connected with quarrying of sand in any area in a water course within a distance of five hundred metres from any dam, check dam, reservoir or any other structure or construction on or across such watercourse, owned or controlled or maintained by Government for the purpose of irrigation
- Any activity involving promotion, use, storage and distribution of pesticides that are banned or are included in classes Ia, Ib and II of the WHO classification (Refer to Annexure IX on WHO classification of pesticides)
- Any industrial and mining activity without obtaining necessary permits
- Any construction activity involving locating of the leach pit, soak pit, earth closet or septic tank within a distance of 7.5 m radius from existing well or 1.2 m from the plot boundary
Annex 7: Labor Management Procedures

1. OVERVIEW OF LABOR USE ON THE PROJECT

This section describes the following, based on available information:

- The total number of workers to be employed on the project, and the different types of workers: direct workers, contracted workers and community workers. Where numbers are not yet firm, an estimate should be provided.
- To the extent possible, a broad description and an indication of the likely characteristics of the project workers e.g. local workers, civil servants, national or international migrants, female workers, workers between the minimum age and 18.
- The timing and sequencing of labor requirements in terms of numbers, locations, types of jobs and skills required.
- The numbers and types of contractors/subcontractors and the likely number of project workers to be employed or engaged by each contractor/subcontractor. If it is likely that project workers will be engaged through brokers, intermediaries or agents, this fact should be noted together with an estimate of how many workers are expected to be recruited in this way.

The following types of workers are specifically at risk in the COVID-19 context.
- **Waste Management Workers** most likely as contractors or subcontractors.
- **Migrant workers** (either domestic or international)

They should be identified and, as far as possible, this section should include estimated numbers, type and duration of employment, relevant terms and conditions and a clear description of the activities they will carry out.

2. ASSESSMENT OF KEY POTENTIAL LABOR RISKS

This section describes the following, based on available information:

- The type and location of the project, and the different activities the project workers will carry out.
- The key labor risks which may be associated with the project
  - The conduct of hazardous work, such as working at heights or in confined spaces, use of heavy machinery, or use of hazardous materials
  - Likely incidents of child labor or forced labor, with reference to the sector or locality
  - Likely presence of migrants or seasonal workers
  - Risks of labor influx or gender-based violence
  - Possible accidents or emergencies, with reference to the sector or locality
  - General understanding and implementation of occupational health and safety requirements
  - Workers mobilized from adjoining provinces or regions or from abroad, or local workers returning from abroad, become vectors for transmission of COVID-19 to other workers in construction project sites and nearby communities.
3. BRIEF OVERVIEW OF LABOR LEGISLATION: TERMS AND CONDITIONS

This section sets out the key aspects of national labor legislation with regards to term and conditions of work, and how national legislation applies to different categories of workers identified in Section 1 and legislation which relates to wages, deductions and benefits).

4. BRIEF OVERVIEW OF LABOR LEGISLATION: OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY

This section sets out the key aspects of the national labor legislation with regards to occupational health and safety, and how national legislation applies to the different categories of workers identified above. The overview focuses on legislation which relates to the items set out in ESS2, paragraphs 24 to 30.

Identification of national guidelines with respect to COVID-19 measures or if none available, reference should be made to WHO guidelines and other guidelines that may be useful. Further legislation that may be relevant could include regulations on national protocols for disease prevention and screening.

5. RESPONSIBLE STAFF

This section identifies the functions and/or individuals responsible for (as relevant):
- engagement and management of project workers
- engagement and management of contractors/subcontractors
- occupational health and safety (OHS)
- training of workers
- addressing worker grievances

6. POLICIES AND PROCEDURES

9.3 This section sets out information on OHS, reporting and monitoring and other general project policies and applicable national legislation.

For projects involving construction/civil works, contractors should develop specific procedures or plans so that adequate precautions are in place to prevent or minimize an outbreak of COVID-19, and it is clear what should be done if a worker gets sick. Details of issues to consider are set out in Section 5 of the World Bank’s Interim Note: COVID-19 Considerations in Construction/Civil Works Projects and include:

- Assessing the characteristics of the workforce, including those with underlying health issues or who may be otherwise at risk
- Considering ways to minimize entry/exit to site or the workplace, and limiting contact between workers and the community/general public
- Training workers on hygiene and other preventative measures, and implementing a communication strategy for regular updates on COVID-19 related issues and the status of affected workers
- Treatment of workers who are or should be self-isolating and/or are displaying symptoms
- Adjustments to work practices, to reduce the number of workers and increase social distancing
• Establishing a procedure to follow if a worker becomes sick (following WHO guidelines)
• Implementing a communication strategy with the community, community leaders and local government in relation to COVID-19 issues on the site.

7. AGE OF EMPLOYMENT
This section sets out details regarding:
• The minimum age for employment on the project
• The process that will be followed to verify the age of project workers
• The procedure that will be followed if underage workers are found working on the project
• The procedure for conducting risk assessments for workers aged between the minimum age and 18

8. TERMS AND CONDITIONS
This section sets out details regarding:
• Specific wages, hours and other provisions that apply to the project
• Maximum number of hours that can be worked on the project
• Any collective agreements that apply to the project. When relevant, provide a list of agreements and describe key features and provisions
• Other specific terms and conditions

9. GRIEVANCE MECHANISM
This section sets out details of the grievance mechanism that will be provided for direct and contracted workers and describes the way in which these workers will be made aware of the mechanism. Where community workers are engaged in the project, details of the grievance mechanism for these workers is set out in Section 11.

10. CONTRACTOR MANAGEMENT
This section sets out details regarding:
• The selection process for contractors, and contractual provisions that will put in place relating to contractors for the management of labor issues, including occupational health and safety
• The procedure for managing and monitoring the performance of contractors
Measures required of Contractors may include:
• As part of the bidding/tendering process, specific requirements for certain types of contractors, and specific selection criteria (e.g. for medical waste management, certifications, previous experience)
• Provision of medical insurance covering treatment for COVID-19, sick pay for workers who either contract the virus or are required to self-isolate due to close contact with infected workers and payment in the event of death
• Specific procedures relating to the workplace and the conduct of the work (e.g. creating at least 6 feet between workers by staging/staggering work, limiting the number of workers present)
• Specific procedures and measures dealing with specific risks. For example, for health care contractors: infection prevention and control (IPC) strategies, health
workers exposure risk assessment and management, developing an emergency response plan, per WHO Guidelines

- Including contractual provisions and procedures for managing and monitoring the performance of contractors, in light of changes in circumstances prompted by COVID-19

11. COMMUNITY WORKERS
Where community workers will be involved in the project, this section sets out details of the terms and conditions of work and identifies measures to check that community labor is provided on a voluntary basis. It also provides details of the type of agreements that are required and how they will be documented. This section sets out details of the grievance mechanism for community workers and the roles and responsibilities for monitoring such workers.

12. PRIMARY SUPPLY WORKERS
Where a significant risk of child or forced labor or serious safety issues in relation to primary suppliers has been identified, this section sets out the procedure for monitoring and reporting on primary supply workers.
### Annex 8. List of Stakeholders Consulted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Organisation</th>
<th>Email</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abbey Legari</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mamogale.legari@sanparks.org">mamogale.legari@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrea Johnson</td>
<td>National Prosecuting Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ajohnson@npa.gov.za">ajohnson@npa.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrew Muir</td>
<td>Wilderness Foundation</td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@wildernessfoundation.org">info@wildernessfoundation.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angus Tanner</td>
<td>Wilderness Foundation Africa</td>
<td><a href="mailto:angus@wfa.africa">angus@wfa.africa</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antoinette Kotze</td>
<td>South African National Biodiversity Institute</td>
<td><a href="mailto:a.kotze@sanbi.org.za">a.kotze@sanbi.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashwell Glasson</td>
<td>Southern African Wildlife College</td>
<td><a href="mailto:aglasson@sawc.org.za">aglasson@sawc.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azisa Parker</td>
<td>South African National Biodiversity Institute</td>
<td><a href="mailto:A.Parker@sanbi.org.za">A.Parker@sanbi.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balungile Sibiya</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:balu@isimangaliso.com">balu@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brett Bowes</td>
<td>Guqula</td>
<td><a href="mailto:brett@tnova.co.za">brett@tnova.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caiphus Khumalo</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Caiphus@isimangaliso.com">Caiphus@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Candice Eb</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Candice.Eb@sanparks.org">Candice.Eb@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caroline McCann</td>
<td>Meat Naturally Project</td>
<td><a href="mailto:carolinemccann2@gmail.com">carolinemccann2@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caroline Petersen</td>
<td>World Bank</td>
<td><a href="mailto:caroline.petersen@undp.org">caroline.petersen@undp.org</a>; <a href="mailto:carolinep@pwnature.co.za">carolinep@pwnature.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cecilia Njenga</td>
<td>UNEP</td>
<td><a href="mailto:cecilia.njenga@un.org">cecilia.njenga@un.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charlotte Nkuna</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:charlotte.nkuna@sanparks.org">charlotte.nkuna@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christelle Grohmann</td>
<td>BDO Advisory</td>
<td><a href="mailto:cgrohmann@bdo.co.za">cgrohmann@bdo.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christiaan Lochner</td>
<td>Wilderness Foundation Africa</td>
<td><a href="mailto:christiaan@wfa.africa">christiaan@wfa.africa</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christopher Mkhonto</td>
<td>Nwane Tours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connie Erasmus</td>
<td>FS Department: Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs</td>
<td><a href="mailto:erasmusc@destea.gov.za">erasmusc@destea.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dan Paleczny</td>
<td>Parks &amp; PA Consulting</td>
<td><a href="mailto:dan.paleczny@hotmail.com">dan.paleczny@hotmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dean Peinke</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Dean.Peinke@ecpta.co.za">Dean.Peinke@ecpta.co.za</a>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dean Peinke</td>
<td>ECPTA</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Dean.Peinke@ecpta.co.za">Dean.Peinke@ecpta.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolly Ganashe</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td><a href="mailto:dolly.ganashe@ecpta.co.za">dolly.ganashe@ecpta.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dries Engelbrecht</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Dries.Engelbrecht@sanparks.org">Dries.Engelbrecht@sanparks.org</a>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eleanor v.d. Berg-McGregor</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Eleanor.VanDenBerg-McGregor@ecpta.co.za">Eleanor.VanDenBerg-McGregor@ecpta.co.za</a>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elzette Bester</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Elzette.Bester@sanparks.org">Elzette.Bester@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hermione Nevill</td>
<td>World Bank/IFC</td>
<td><a href="mailto:hnevill@ifc.org">hnevill@ifc.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Organization</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hilda Mthimunye</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Hilda.Mthimunye@sanparks.org">Hilda.Mthimunye@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jabulani Mkhabela</td>
<td>Mabasa CCA</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Mbotho2009@hotmail.com">Mbotho2009@hotmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jabulani Ngubane</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:jabulani@isimangaliso.com">jabulani@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacob Tebogo Mohudi</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:tebogo.mohudi@sanparks.org">tebogo.mohudi@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane Nimpamya</td>
<td>UNEP</td>
<td><a href="mailto:jane.nimpamya@un.org">jane.nimpamya@un.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jean Harris</td>
<td>WILDTRUST</td>
<td><a href="mailto:jeanh@wildtrust.co.za">jeanh@wildtrust.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jenny Kettingham</td>
<td>Umhlabla Consulting</td>
<td><a href="mailto:jketters@iafrica.com">jketters@iafrica.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah Mabena</td>
<td>Thebe Investment Corporation</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Jerry@thebe.co.za">Jerry@thebe.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jo Shaw</td>
<td>WWF-South Africa</td>
<td><a href="mailto:jshaw@wwf.org.za">jshaw@wwf.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Johan Jonas</td>
<td>Umhlabla Consulting</td>
<td><a href="mailto:johan@umhlabagroup.com">johan@umhlabagroup.com</a>; <a href="mailto:jjonas@iafrica.com">jjonas@iafrica.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joseph Fletcher</td>
<td>Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust</td>
<td><a href="mailto:josephfletcher21@gmail.com">josephfletcher21@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kgomoottso Matthews</td>
<td>Conservation South Africa</td>
<td><a href="mailto:kmatthews@conservation.org">kmatthews@conservation.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koen Cholo</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:FCholo@environment.gov.za">FCholo@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kristal Maze</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Kristal.Maze@sanparks.org">Kristal.Maze@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lena Lukhele</td>
<td>Thebe Investment Corporation</td>
<td><a href="mailto:lenalukhele@outlook.com">lenalukhele@outlook.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linda McClure</td>
<td>Raizcorp</td>
<td><a href="mailto:LindaM@raizcorp.com">LindaM@raizcorp.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindani Beville</td>
<td>Likhaya Lethu CPA Chairperson</td>
<td><a href="mailto:bevilelindani@gmail.com">bevilelindani@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lungelo Zulu</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:lungelo@isimangaliso.com">lungelo@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lungile Ntuli</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:lungile@isimangaliso.com">lungile@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandisa Nkosi</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mandisa@isimangaliso.com">mandisa@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marisa Coetzee</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Marisa.Coetzee@sanparks.org">Marisa.Coetzee@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matshidiso Mokhatla</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:MMOkhatla@environment.gov.za">MMOkhatla@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matthew Norval</td>
<td>Wilderness Foundation Africa</td>
<td><a href="mailto:matthew@wfa.africa">matthew@wfa.africa</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Baloyi</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:MaBaloyi@environment.gov.za">MaBaloyi@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Fihla</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mzwandile.fihla@sanparks.org">mzwandile.fihla@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maylene Broderick</td>
<td>Department of Tourism</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mbroderick@tourism.gov.za">mbroderick@tourism.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mazwi Lama</td>
<td>Mayibuye Ndlovu Development Trust</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mazwilama@gmail.com">mazwilama@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mazwi Mkhulisi</td>
<td>Vumelana Advisory Fund</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mmkhulisi@vumelana.org.za">mmkhulisi@vumelana.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melikhaya Phongolo</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Melikhaya.Pongolo@ecpta.co.za">Melikhaya.Pongolo@ecpta.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Organization</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michelle Hamer</td>
<td>South African National Biodiversity Institute</td>
<td><a href="mailto:M.hamer@sanbi.org.za">M.hamer@sanbi.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michelle Van der Bank</td>
<td>University of Johannesburg</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mvdbank@uj.ac.za">mvdbank@uj.ac.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mmamodise Madiope</td>
<td>Airbnb</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mmamodise.madiope@ext.aiirthunb.com">mmamodise.madiope@ext.aiirthunb.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mpho Ratshikhopha</td>
<td>South African National Biodiversity Institute</td>
<td><a href="mailto:m.gumula@sanbi.org.za">m.gumula@sanbi.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Msizi Nzama</td>
<td>Tourvest</td>
<td><a href="mailto:m.nzama@tourvest.co.za">m.nzama@tourvest.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mthokozisi Nsele</td>
<td>Kosi Tonga Safaris</td>
<td><a href="mailto:nselemthokozisi@gmail.com">nselemthokozisi@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naledi Mneno</td>
<td>DEFF</td>
<td><a href="mailto:nhlatshwayo@environment.gov.za">nhlatshwayo@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natasha Wilson</td>
<td>South African National Biodiversity Institute</td>
<td><a href="mailto:N.Wilson@sanbi.org.za">N.Wilson@sanbi.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ngcali Nomtshongwana</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ngcali.nomtshongwana@gmail.com">ngcali.nomtshongwana@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicholas Funda</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:nicholus.funda@sanparks.org">nicholus.funda@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nick De Goede</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:nick.degoede@sanparks.org">nick.degoede@sanparks.org</a>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nkuli Sabelo</td>
<td>SMME - iSimangaliso</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sbuwashpizza@gmail.com">sbuwashpizza@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ntsikelelo Kulati</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ntsikelelo@isimangaliso.com">ntsikelelo@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul Daphne</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:PDaphne@environment.gov.za">PDaphne@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul Zille</td>
<td>Tourism Conservation Fund</td>
<td><a href="mailto:paulz@tcfund.org.za">paulz@tcfund.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phiusiwe Mkhabela</td>
<td>Dinango Lodge</td>
<td><a href="mailto:dinango@gmail.com">dinango@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piet Theron</td>
<td>World Bank</td>
<td><a href="mailto:itheron@worldbank.org">itheron@worldbank.org</a>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portia Moropa</td>
<td>DEFF</td>
<td><a href="mailto:PMoropa@environment.gov.za">PMoropa@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rajesh Harrikaran</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:RHarrrikaran@environment.gov.za">RHarrrikaran@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riaan De Jager</td>
<td>Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism</td>
<td><a href="mailto:DeJagerR@ledet.gov.za">DeJagerR@ledet.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roger Bills</td>
<td>South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity</td>
<td><a href="mailto:r.bills@saiab.ac.za">r.bills@saiab.ac.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roland Vorwerk</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:RVorwerk@environment.gov.za">RVorwerk@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabasitain Adams</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:SAdams@environment.gov.za">SAdams@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoni Mphaphuli</td>
<td>Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Mphaphulise@ledet.gov.za">Mphaphulise@ledet.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoni Mphaphulise</td>
<td>LEDET</td>
<td><a href="mailto:mphaphulise@ledet.gov.za">mphaphulise@ledet.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Organization</td>
<td>Email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibusiso Bukhosini</td>
<td>Isimangaliso Wetland Park Authority</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Bukhosini@isimangaliso.com">Bukhosini@isimangaliso.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibusiso Tenza</td>
<td>Anglo American</td>
<td><a href="mailto:sibusiso.tenza@angloamerica.com">sibusiso.tenza@angloamerica.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simon Malete</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:SMalete@environment.gov.za">SMalete@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sizwe Mkhulise</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Sizwe.Mkhulise@ecpta.co.za">Sizwe.Mkhulise@ecpta.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suzanne van der Westhuizen</td>
<td>SANParks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:suzanne.vanderwestguizen@sanparks.org">suzanne.vanderwestguizen@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tanya Dos Santos</td>
<td>Investec</td>
<td><a href="mailto:TDSantos@investec.co.za">TDSantos@investec.co.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thokozani Mlambo</td>
<td>Makhasa CCA</td>
<td><a href="mailto:thoksmlambo@gmail.com">thoksmlambo@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thulani Mfundisi</td>
<td>Likhaya Lethu CPA Secretariate</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ithulanimfundisi@gmail.com">ithulanimfundisi@gmail.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tryphid Mashala</td>
<td>Limpopo Economic Development Environment and Tourism</td>
<td><a href="mailto:MashalaMT@ledet.gov.za">MashalaMT@ledet.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wadzi Mandivenyi</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:WMandivenyi@environment.gov.za">WMandivenyi@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wayne Erlank</td>
<td>Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Wayne.Erlank@ecpta.co.za">Wayne.Erlank@ecpta.co.za</a>;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xola Mkefe</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:Xola.Mkefe@sanparks.org">Xola.Mkefe@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yolan Friedman</td>
<td>Endangered Wildlife Trust</td>
<td><a href="mailto:yolanf@ewt.org.za">yolanf@ewt.org.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yuval Tchetchik</td>
<td>Department of Environment, Forestry and Fisheries</td>
<td><a href="mailto:ytcchetchik@environment.gov.za">ytcchetchik@environment.gov.za</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zimkhitha Zungula</td>
<td>South African National Parks</td>
<td><a href="mailto:zimkhitha.zungula@sanparks.org">zimkhitha.zungula@sanparks.org</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zolile Poswa</td>
<td>Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife</td>
<td><a href="mailto:zolile.poswa@kznwildlife.com">zolile.poswa@kznwildlife.com</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX 9: PROJECT MAP
Annex 10 – The South Africa Biodiversity Stewardship Program

Biodiversity Stewardship Program (a voluntary program) in South Africa provides an opportunity for communities to have their land incorporated as part of a state-owned national park or nature reserve, or a privately-owned protected area (PA). For example, in the case of the GEF7 project, a local community could ask the government to drop the fence in between the national park and the community-owned land located adjacent to the park so that it could be included in the conservation area. This, in turn, provides the community with opportunities to benefit – including through earning income – from the national park or PA. Such benefits could include a portion of revenue from park visitations (which now includes the communities’ own land); traversing rights on communal land or into the park; free movement of wildlife to support community-based tourism or sustainable use (hunting) ventures; opportunities to own and operate tourism infrastructure such as a lodge; or rental agreements (usually with an annual fee per ha) from the national park/PA.

What is Biodiversity Stewardship?
Biodiversity stewardship is an approach to securing land in biodiversity priority areas through entering into agreements with private and communal landowners to protect and manage the land for conservation purposes. This process is led by conservation authorities in South Africa and supported by conservation NGOs, and it recognises landowners as the custodians of biodiversity on their land. The objective of biodiversity stewardship is to conserve and manage biodiversity priority areas through voluntary agreements with landowners and communities. This may involve formal protection, management and restoration of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems. Importantly, biodiversity stewardship contributes to several broader goals:

- Conserving a representative sample of biodiversity;
- Involving landowners and communities as stewards of biodiversity;
- Supporting the biodiversity economy, especially in rural areas;
- Rehabilitating and maintaining ecological infrastructure;
- Encouraging climate change adaptation and ecosystem-based mitigation; and
- Supporting sustainable development.

When was this introduced?
In South Africa, Biodiversity Stewardship (BDS) began as a pilot in 2003 in the Western Cape Province. By March 2018, provincial biodiversity stewardship programmes had secured over 54,000 ha through the creation of 94 protected areas with long-term security. During the 2017-2018 financial year, BDS contributed approximately 107,854 ha to the National Protected Areas Expansion Strategy from Majority Provinces. Since 2016 there have been several large declarations including (i) Mountain Zebra, 264,083 ha; (ii) Sneeuwberg, 16,208 ha and (iii) Greater Lakenvlei, 14,123 ha.

The BDS was initially supported under the Primary Environmental laws, the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) of 1992, the National Environmental Management Act (1998) plus other laws and international protocols. Subsequently, the legislation of 2016, 2017, and the guidelines of 2018 came in to reinforce the implementation of the program.

How in practice does this process work?
Biodiversity stewardship is founded on several principles that are key to successful implementation. These include focusing on biodiversity priority areas to allow implementers to invest limited resources on the most important areas; requiring voluntary commitment from
landowners, both private and communal; and fostering co-operative governance and the development of partnerships. Importantly, communities that participate in biodiversity stewardship arrangements retain ownership over their land through what is called a “Conversation agreement.”

Investing limited state resources on private or communal land requires some guarantee of the persistence of biodiversity on that land, as well as a formalised management relationship between the landowners/users and government. The use of contractual agreements to secure land is made possible through the legislative framework of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (NEMPAA), the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA) and South African contract and property law. Key to implementation is the fundamental landowner focus with dedicated landowner extension support. Biodiversity stewardship sites fall into three categories, viz. protected areas, conservation areas and biodiversity Partnership areas.

**What are the benefits of biodiversity stewardship?**

Stewardship does not displace people from land, but rather encourages sustainable economic activity, built on wise use of natural resources. It is particularly effective in multiple use landscapes where biodiversity priority areas are embedded in a matrix of agricultural and other livelihoods. A significant benefit of adopting biodiversity stewardship is the cost saving to the state to meet biodiversity, protected areas and other environmental objectives. Stewardship approaches incur a fraction of the cost compared to the traditional way of acquiring and managing land as state owned protected areas. Biodiversity stewardship leverages private sector investment to achieve biodiversity, protected area and climate resilience objectives. The long-term benefit of biodiversity stewardship, particularly on communally owned land, includes guidance on and assistance for the sustainable use of natural resources on which communities depend for their livelihoods. Hence it is an underpinning factor in Biodiversity Economy (BE) implementation and achieving the goals of BE, which include the diversification of community livelihoods and protected area expansion.
What kind of agreements are made?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF AGREEMENT</th>
<th>LEGAL MECHANISM</th>
<th>DESCRIPTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BIODIVERSITY STEWARDSHIP CATEGORY 1: PROTECTED AREAS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Nature Reserve or National Park | National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act 57 of 2003) | • Suitable for sites with highest biodiversity importance  
• Binding on property: declaration of Nature Reserve, and a title deed restriction  
• Binding on landowner: contract with landowner usually for 99 years/in perpetuity**  
• Considered to be part of South Africa’s protected area estate, and contributes to meeting protected area targets |
| Protected Environment | National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act 57 of 2003) | • Suitable for declaration over multiple properties  
• Less restrictive land use than Nature Reserve or National Park  
• Binding on property: declaration of Protected Environment  
Optional title deed restriction  
• Binding on landowner  
• Considered to be part of South Africa’s protected area estate, and contributes to meeting protected area targets |
| **BIODIVERSITY STEWARDSHIP CATEGORY 2: CONSERVATION AREAS** | | |
| Biodiversity Management Agreement | National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Act 10 of 2004) | • Less restrictive than protected area declaration  
• Must have a Biodiversity Management Plan (in terms of Biodiversity Act) on all/part of the property  
• Binding on landowner: contract with landowner for a minimum of 5 years, or longer in 5-year increments |
| Biodiversity Agreement | Contract law | • Less restrictive than protected area declaration  
• Binding on landowner: contract with landowner for a minimum of 5 years or longer |
| Conservation Servitude | Property | • Less restrictive than protected area declaration  
• Binding on landowner: notarial deed registered at the Deeds Registry for a minimum of 99 years or in perpetuity |
| Business, Industry and Biodiversity initiatives | Examples:  
• Conservation Champions Programme  
• Water Stewards  
• Sustainable Farming |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Conservation agreements | • Offers direct incentives for conservation through a negotiated benefit package in return for conservation actions by communities  
• Signed for a 3-year duration (with the option for renewal) |

**BIODIVERSITY STEWARDSHIP CATEGORY 3: PARTNERSHIP AREAS**

This is an informal category of biodiversity stewardship which involves a registration of a site within this category by the provincial conservation authority or conservation NGO.

• No legal certainty, duration and intent  
• Involves collective action by landowners or communities  
• Biodiversity conservation management benefits without formal agreements or accountability  
• Registration of mechanisms is advised

**Examples of such include (but are not limited to):**  
• Conservancies  
• Buffer Zones and Transition Zones of Biosphere Reserves  
• Sites of Conservation Significance  
• Community conservation areas

**Eligibility for tax incentives requires a minimum of a 99 year or in perpetuity title deed restrictions**